



PARENTS' GUIDE





الصف السادس الإبتدائي

الفصـل الدراسـي الأول

2025

6th

PRIMARY SIX
FIRST TERM

دار غــزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Contents

Part 1

- Punctuation
- Writing Skills
- Specification for Six Year Primary
- Let's remember!

Part 2

Theme 1 I discover myself

Unit 1 Green cities

Unit 2 We are all different

Unit 3 Vacation plans

Review 1



Theme 2 Myself and others

Unit 4 Celebrate good times

Unit 5 Amazing journeys

Unit 6 Taking care

Review 2

Part 3

- Listening scripts



Punctuation
علامات الترقيم



Capital Letters
الحروف الكبيرة
A - B - C

1. بداية الجملة
خبرية - استفهامية - أمرية

2. الألقاب
Mr - Miss - Mrs
الاختصارات
Dr - CD - TV

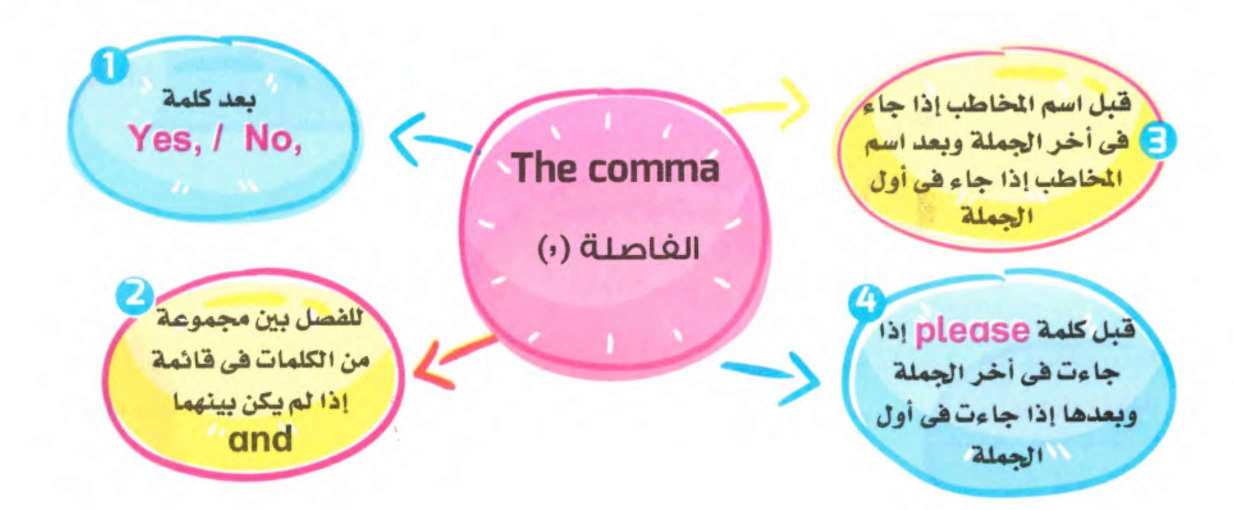
3. أنا I
الضمير I فى أى مكان فى الجملة capital

4. أسماء البلاد والمدن
Cairo - Alexandria
أسماء الشهور
May - April
الجنسيات
Egyptian

5. أسماء الأشخاص
Yasser - Noha
أيام الأسبوع
Tuesday - Friday

Examples:

1. **S**ameh is a teacher. (جملة خبرية)
2. **C**lose your book. (جملة أمرية)
3. **W**here's your house? (جملة استفهامية)
4. **I** want some water. **I**'m thirsty. (الضمير I)
5. We visited **C**airo in **M**arch. (أسماء مدن وشهور)
6. **M**r Tamer plays tennis on **W**ednesday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)



Examples:

- Yes, they are. / No, they aren't. (بعد Yes, / No,)
- I want fruit, fish and rice. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات فى قائمة)
- Come here, Eman. / Eman, come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- Give me this book, please. / Please, give me this book. (كلمة Please)



Examples:

1. We are friends. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close the window. (جملة أمرية)
3. How are you, Karim? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hello! Nabil. (علامة تعجب)

Writing Skills



How to write a paragraph
كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة موضوع من ٥٠ كلمة من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن نتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها فى اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولا ترتيب الجملة

1 فاعل			2 فعل		3 تكملة الجملة
اسم شخص	مكان	شيء	مضارع بسيط / مستمر	ماضى بسيط / مستمر	ظرف مكان - زمان / صفة / حال
Amged	Garden	Car	is going / go / goes	was doing / did	home / yesterday happy / well

ثانيا صيغ الجمل المختلفة

فاعل + verb to be + صفة	He is excited.
فاعل + verb to be + وظيفة	Gamal is a doctor.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + مكان	She went to the party.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + زمن	We are ready on Sunday.
فاعل + فعل + مفعول	I help her.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + الساعة	We get up at 7 o'clock.

1 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

Your birthday party

Guiding questions
1- When's your birthday?
2- Where's your birthday?

Yesterday was my birthday. I made a big party at my garden. I have a nice garden around my house. My mother prepared some sandwiches. My father bought a chocolate cake. I liked it very much. My friends came to the party. We sang songs and danced. We played video games and football. It was a nice day.



How to write an email
كيف تكتب بريد الإليكترونى

To: البريد الإليكترونى الخاص بالمرسل إليه:

From: البريد الإليكترونى الخاص بالراسل:

Subject: موضوع أو عنوان الرسالة:

Dear + اسم المرسل إليه ,

How are you? I want to tell you about

تكتب هنا جمل عادية مثل الفقرة الإنشائية ------------------------

----

See you soon.

اسم الراسل

- اتبع الخطوات الآتية لكتابة بريد إلكترونى بشكل منظم:

١- فى السطر الأول من بريدك الإليكترونى أبدأ بكلمة "Dear" أو "Hi" ثم اكتب اسم المرسل إليه:

٢- فى السطر الثانى ابدأ بـ: "I'm happy to write to you."
"Thanks for writing to me."

٣- أسأل عن أحوال صديقك بـ:

"How are you?" / "How are things?" / "How's life?"

٤- اذكر سبب إرسالك للبريد الإليكترونى ولماذا كتبته:

I want to tell you about --.

٥- يجب أن يحتوى بريدك الإليكترونى على فكرة واحدة فقط وليس أكثر من فكرة:

٦- عند الكتابة إلى صديق يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية مثل كلمات: "awesome" **أو** "cool"

٧- قم بإنهاء بريدك الإليكترونى بعبارات مثل: "Write soon." **أو** "See you soon."
أو "By for you now." **أو** "Hope to hear from you soon."

لاحظ

بعض التحويلات الآتية عند كتابة البريد الإلكترونى:

١- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة **him** أو **her** أو **them** قم بتحويلها فى الإيميل إلى كلمة **you**.

٢- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة **your** نحولها إلى كلمة **my**.

٣- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة **you** نحولها إلى كلمة **I**.

• يأتى السؤال كالتالى:

Write an email of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

beaches - amazing

To your friend Hany to tell him about your trip to Alexandria. Your name is Emad and your email address is emad17@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is hany33@gmail.com.

New Message

To (1) ايميل المرسل اليه ... **Cc** **Bcc**

From (2) ايميل الراسل ...

Subject (3) موضوع الرسالة ...

(4) **Dear / Hi** اسم المرسل اليه **(Hany),**

جملة افتتاحية (5) → ---------------------------------

موضوع الايميل (6) → ---------------------------------

جملة ختامية (7) → ---------------------------------

تحية الخاتمة (8) **Yours / Love**
اسم الراسل **(Emad)**

Send

لاحظ

إذا لم يكن بالسؤال عنوان البريد الاليكترونى الخاص بك وبصديقك
اكتب اسم صديقك فى :To واسمك فى :From



How to write a blog
كيف تكتب تدوينة

1 Write a blog of about FIFTY (50) words to your friend about your new school. Your name is Maha:

١- تاريخ اليوم

Maha's blog

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

٢- عنوان الموضوع

Tuesday, 5th August



My new school

٣- مقدمة افتتاحية

Dear Diary,
It was a nice day today. I went to a new school near my apartment.
My father had a new job in the Sixth of October City so, we moved to a new apartment. At first I was sad because I left my friends. My new school was bigger than my old school. I made new friends. They welcomed me and showed me my classroom. The teachers were kind and nice. I think that it's a special school. 🙂

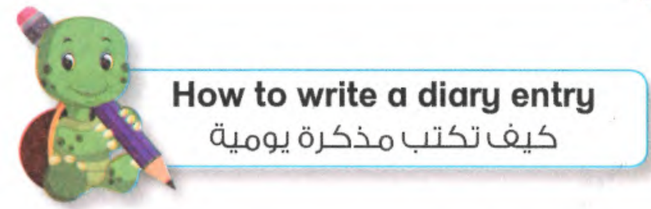
٤- رموز تعبيرية

٥- الصور



- خطوات كتابة التدوينة:

١- قم بكتابة تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة يومية جديدة.
٢- ثم قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب للموضوع الذى سنتحدث عنه.
٣- ابدأ اليومية بكتابة **"Dear Diary"**.
٤- قم بوصف الأماكن والأحداث التى مرت عليك خلال اليوم بلغة غير رسمية.
٥- قم بوصف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
٦- يجب أن تتضمن اليومية على بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل **"I"** أو **"my"**.
٧- قم باستخدام بعض الصور المرئية والرموز التعبيرية لتوصيل الفكرة بشكل سريع.
٨- أعط رأيك فى الموضوع الذى نتحدث عنه باستخدام بعض العبارات مثل:
"I think that ...." أو "In my opinion..............."



How to write a diary entry
كيف تكتب مذكرة يومية

- خطوات كتابة المذكرة اليومية

- A diary has features that are different from other types of text:

- تحتوي المذكرة اليومية على سمات تختلف عن الأنواع الأخرى من النصوص:

- It usually has short paragraphs, each one about what happened on a single day.

- إنها عادة تحتوي على فقرات قصيرة ، كل واحدة تدور حول ما حدث في يوم واحد.

- It is usually written in an informal style and uses first person pronouns (I, we, my, etc.).

- تكتب عادةً بأسلوب غير رسمي وتستخدم ضمائر الشخص الأول (المتكلم) (أنا ، نحن ، ملكي ، إلخ).

- It usually describes the writer's thoughts, feelings, and opinions.

- تصف عادةً أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآرائه.

- It usually describes people, places, and experiences.

- تصف عادةً الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب.

مثال لمذكرة يومية:

Dear Diary,

Today while I was cleaning my cupboard, I found some old pictures of me and my sisters. We were laughing a lot in this picture. I believe that it should be some really funny moment. Another funny picture, when I was hiding and eating chocolate from my father's pocket so that I don't have to share with anyone.

A picture of us was also there. It was on my sister's birthday. Some pictures made me laugh and some made me cry.

Gameela

Tips to answer the comprehension questions

إرشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1. قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) فى النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is..................
- The passage is mainly about....................

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية فى النص

- هى النقطة الأساسية التى يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.
- تكون جملة وليست سؤالا.
- الجمل الأخرى فى النص تعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.
- غالباً تكون فى أول جملة أو آخر جملة فى النص.

لاحظ المثال الآتى

- ما باللون الأحمر هى الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هى التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got a new coat. My new coat is blue and red. My coat is very nice and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a picture of a snow man. I will wear my coat to school.

2. قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات فى جملة معينة فى القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....

- The underlined word '.......' refers to ....

ثانيًا: أسئلة (open-ended) استفهامية

3. قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) لأحد الفقرات فى النص فى جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the first / second / third paragraph (into one sentence).

كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو اكثر

١- حدد اسم الشخص او الشئ او الحيوان الاساسى بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها

٢- حدد اهم شئ يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشئ او الحيوان واستخدم اهم الافعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك وممكن استخدام افعال اخرى تؤدى نفس المعنى.

٣- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية او الغير أساسية او المعلومات الأقل أهمية

٤- أكتب الفكرة الأساسية فى حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب

1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines.

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful visit for them. Tourists also come to see the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

نتبع الخطوات السابقة:

١- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل اساسى بالسائحين **tourists**

٢- أهم ما يخصهم هو زيارة مصر والأماكن السياحية بها والأفعال التى تعبر عن ذلك **come / see /visit**

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

Summary

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids and the wonderful natural world such as the Red Sea.

2- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own words.

My father enjoys playing football with his friends. He believes in doing sports and teaches us the same. He wants me to be clever at school. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

١- أهم شخص **My father**

٢- وأهم شئ يخصه أنه يؤمن بممارسة الرياضة ويريدني أن أتفوق في دراستي.

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤ - قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

Summary

My father thinks that doing sports is very important and he wants .me to be clever at school

Specifications for Sixth Year Primary

مواصفات الصف السادس الابتدائي ٢٠٢٤ - ٢٠٢٥

Marks: 30 Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (6 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d: (6 Marks

A text about **SIXTY (60)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark and a half each)**

B- Reading (13 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

Learners are given **FOUR (4)** MCQs vocabulary items based on the Set Books. They are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(One mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4 Marks)

An unseen text from **SIXTY (60)** to **SEVENTY (70)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FIVE** (5) words given. The first sentence should be written in full. **(One mark each)**

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **NINTY (90)** to **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for Primary **SIX**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. THREE (3) MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options; each dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

(One mark each)

B: TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

(One mark each)

C- Writing (10 Marks)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3 Marks)

THREE (3) scrambled statements of not less than **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form correct sentences.

(One mark each)

6 Read and write the correct form of the words(s) between brackets: (2 Marks)

TWO (2) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets. **(One mark each)**

7 Punctuate the following: (One mark)

ONE (1) simple statement (sentence **or** question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks each are provided (**Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly. **(Half a mark each)**

8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5 Marks)

Learners are asked to write not less than **FIFTY (50)** words related to a specific topic using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file, tables.....etc. in **ONE (1)** of the following writing forms:

- Paragraph - Email - Blog - Text message - Diary

(One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary- One mark for grammar- One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation)

Let's remember!

1 Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



2 Write the words from Exercise 1 in the correct group. Then listen, check and say:

اكتب الكلمات من التمرين (١) فى المجموعة الصحيحة. ثم استمع وتأكد وقل:

Fruit	Vegetables
bananas	carrots

3 Find and circle seven more words for sports:

أوجد وضع دائرة حول سبع كلمات إضافية تعبر عن الرياضة :

k	a	r	a	t	e	y	u	i	o	p	l	k
u	f	d	s	a	s	w	i	m	m	i	n	g
n	o	i	u	y	q	t	r	e	w	q	m	n
g	s	d	f	g	u	h	j	k	l	b	v	s
f	o	o	t	b	a	l	l	x	c	z	n	a
u	f	j	e	r	s	x	m	t	r	s	w	i
j	o	r	n	t	h	a	n	d	b	a	l	l
y	p	h	n	b	d	f	t	y	o	d	p	i
e	r	t	i	y	u	i	o	p	k	e	j	n
s	a	z	s	x	c	v	b	n	m	i	a	g

4 Complete the sentences. Use the sports from Exercise 3:

أكمل الجمل. استخدم الرياضات من التمرين (٣) :

1. My brother is on the football team. They have a match next week.
2. I think ___________ is difficult. You can't kick the ball with your feet!
3. My sister is good at ___________ She goes to the pool every Friday.
4. I'm good at ___________ I have a black belt.
5. My friend and I are playing ______________ on the grass with our new rackets.



6. We love ______________ We take our boat on the river.
7. I'm not very good at ___________ I can't hit the ball hard enough against the wall!
8. I can't always tell the difference between karate and ______ but I like both sports!

5 Look and match: انظر وصل:



6 Look and write about the weather in each city:

انظر واكتب عن الطقس فى كل مدينة :

City	Cairo	Alexandria	Giza	Port Said
Weather				

1. In Cairo, it's sunny and hot.

2. ....

3. ....

4. ....

7 Complete for you and people you know the sentences with the words in the box:

اكمل الجمل بما يناسبك ويناسب من تعرفه من الاشخاص بكلمات من الاطار:

drought - flood - heat wave - sandstorms - windy

1. When it gets very ...windy... in the desert, there are sometimes sandstorms .
2. A .... happens when there is too much rain and rivers are full.
3. A .... is when it's very hot for a short time.
4. If it doesn't rain for a very long time and plants can't grow, there is a ....

8 Unjumble the letters to make words for places in town. Write the words under the pictures:

رتب الحروف لتكوين كلمات عن أماكن فى المدينة. اكتب الكلمات تحت الصور:

a. saqure
b. shpponig allm
c. kbna
d. sttanoi
e. lrbiray
f. fcaotry
g. muusem

❶ 

bank

❷ 

----

❸ 

----

❹ 

----

❺ 

----

❻ 

----

❼ 



I discover myself

Green cities

مدن خضراء



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, write, and research about green spaces in towns.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب ويعمل بحث عن المساحات الخضراء في المدن.

2. Talk about how often we do things.

- يتحدث الطالب عن عدد المرات التي نقوم فيها بعمل الأشياء.

3. Listen and read about a project to make a city greener.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ عن مشروع لجعل المدينة أكثر خضرة.

4. Say the sounds (th) (θ) and (s) /s/.

- يقول الطالب الأصوات /s/ (s) و(θ) (th) .

5. Write an email about things I miss about Egypt.

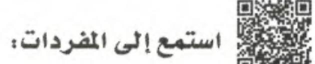
- يكتب الطالب بريداً إلكترونياً عن الأشياء التي يفتقدها فى مصر.

6. Research and make an infographic about my area.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وعمل رسم بياني عن منطقته.

Lesson 1 We work in the community garden

Key vocabulary



apartment block
عمارة سكنية



chemicals
مواد كيميائية



harvest
يحصد



natural fertilizer
سماد طبيعى



plant
يزرع



roof
سطح

Fruit and vegetables فاكهة وخضروات

potatoes	بطاطس	tomatoes	طماطم
peppers	فلفل	pineapple	اناناس
onions	بصل	dates	بلح
lettuce	خس	lemons	ليمون

Help your child to know about community garden. **ساعد طفلك أن يعرف عن الحديقة المجتمعية.**

Other words كلمات أخرى

tomorrow	غدا	local area	منطقة محلية
community garden	حديقة اجتماعية	interesting	شيق / مثير
space	مساحة	fresh	طازج
volunteer	متطوع	organic	عضوى (طبيعى بدون مواد كيميائية)
neighborhood	حى سكنى	square meter	متر مربع
roof garden	حديقة علوية (فوق السطح)		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
plant	يزرع	planted
produce	ينتج	produced

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew
sell	يبيع	sold
mean	يعنى/ يقصد	meant



Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

all the time	طول الوقت	make friends	يُكون صداقات
in the middle of	.. فى منتصف	it sounds great	يبدو رائعا
a year	فى السنة/ سنويا		

Study the following

1. **I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden.**
   - أساعد عمتي دائما في الحديقة الاجتماعية بعد ظهر يوم الجمعة.
2. **It's a big green space on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block.**
   - إنها مساحة خضراء كبيرة على سطح عمارة عمتي سلمى.
3. **We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!**
   -نحن نزرع الخضار لنأكله ، وأحيانًا نبيعه في السوق أيضًا!
4. **What things do you grow?**
   - ما الأشياء التي تزرعها؟

5 Sometimes we also plant fruit trees.
- في بعض الأحيان نزرع أيضًا أشجار الفاكهة.

6 People can grow their own fresh food.
- يمكن للناس أن يزرعوا طعامهم الطازج.

7 We use natural fertilizer in organic food, we never use chemicals.
- نستخدم الأسمدة الطبيعية في الأغذية العضوية ، ولا نستخدم المواد الكيميائية أبدًا.

8 Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?
- هل تنتج حديقتك الكثير من الخضراوات؟

9 Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city.
- تساعد الحدائق العلوية أيضًا في تنظيف الهواء في المدينة.

10 They're a great place to meet people and make friends.
- إنها مكان رائع للقاء الناس وتكوين صداقات.

11 We need more community roof gardens in our city!
- نحن بحاجة إلى المزيد من الحدائق العلوية الاجتماعية في مدينتنا!

1 Listen and read. Where does Mariam go on Fridays?

استمع واقرأ. اين تذهب مريم فى أيام الجمعة؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:



Nour : No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house?

Mariam : Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden(1).

Nour : The community garden? What's that?

Mariam : It's a big green space(2) on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block(3). The people who work there are all volunteers(4) from the neighborhood(5). We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!

Nour : That's interesting. What things do you grow?

Mariam : Well, we usually plant tomatoes, peppers(6), onions, lettuce(7) – things people eat all the time. Sometimes we also plant fruit trees. This year we have lemons and dates.

Arabic Meaning

١- حديقة علوية (اجتماعية)
٢- مساحة
٣- عمارة سكنية
٤- متطوعين
٥- حى سكنى
٦- فلفل
٧- خس

Nour : And you grow all this food in the middle of the city? Wow!

Mariam : Yes, it means people can grow their own fresh food and it's organic,[8] too, which means we only use natural fertilizer[9] - we never use chemicals[10].

Nour : Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?

Mariam : Yes, it does. From just one square meter[11] of roof garden, we can harvest[12] twenty kilos of vegetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, which is good for people's health. And they're a great place to meet people and make friends.

Nour : It sounds great, Mariam. We need more community roof gardens like that in our city!

٨- عضوى
٩- سماد طبيعى
١٠- مواد كيميائية
١١- متر مربع
١٢- يحصد

2 Complete the summary with the words from the box:

اكمل الملخص بكلمات من القائمة :

aunt - clean - friends - grow - plants - roof - sell - tomorrow

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house (1) ......tomorrow.... , but Mariam goes to help her (2) .... on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the (3) .... of an apartment block. They (4) .... vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they (5) .... them, too. Mariam thinks the community garden is a good idea because the (6) .... also help to (7) .... the air in the city, and it is a good place to make new (8) ....

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

'Urban greening' is an important part of town planning in many countries. It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities. These can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's roofs.

يعد التخضير الحضري (المدن والأحياء) جزءًا مهمًا من تخطيط المدن في العديد من البلدان. وذلك يعني إنشاء مناطق للنباتات والأشجار في المدن. يمكن أن تكون هذه الأماكن حدائق عامة صغيرة بين المبانى أو حدائق فوق اسطح منازل الناس.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. My grandpa lives in the ....

   a city   b country   c moon   d sun

2. My grandpa has a big ....

   a bike   b farm   c car   d roof

3. My grandpa plants ....

   a pineapples   b tomatoes   c potatoes   d carrots

4. I help my grandpa to .... the crops.

   a play   b harvest   c eat   d draw

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We don't use ------------- when we grow organic food. أسيوط (2023)

   a fertilizers   b chemicals   c water   d seeds

2. My father is a farmer. He grows ------------- on his farm. أسيوط (2023)

   a vegetables   b balloons   c games   d chemicals

3. The people who work in the community garden are ------------- . الاسكندرية (2023)

   a sellers   b cooks   c singers   d volunteers

4. We prefer ------------- food with no chemicals. القاهرة (2023)

   a organic   b dirty   c polluted   d bad

5. Farmers put natural ------------- on the soil to make plants grow well. القليوبية (2023)

   a fertilizer   b fruits   c sugar   d oil

6. We have a farm and we ------------- many crops every year.

   a burn   b raise   c feed   d harvest

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

7. I live in a/an .... in the city with my family.

a tent   b apartment block   c cave   d factory

8. Farmers use .... to kill insects that eat the crops.

a fertilizers   b crops   c chemicals   d lemons

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: (القاهرة - إدارة بدر (2024)

market - volunteers - space - grow - fruits

There's a community garden on the roof of my uncle's apartment block. The community garden is a big green ❶ .... People can ❷ .... vegetables to eat. They can also sell them in the ❸ .... .We can grow all this food in the middle of the city. Some ❹ .... from the neighborhood come and help us. I sometimes help my uncle in the community garden.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. lemons - This - we - dates - have - and - year. (سوهاج (2023)

....

2. work - We - garden - community - the - in. (الاسكندرية (2023)

....

3. grow - to - eat - them - We - vegetables - and - sell.

....

4. your - vegetables - garden - a lot of - Does - produce?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. it sounds great, mariam

....

2. what do you grow ,eyad

....

Lesson 2 Part 1 ★ We always work hard

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

logo	شعار	gymnastics	رياضة الجمباز
Mini forest	غابة صغيرة	foreign	اجنبى / غير اصلى المنشأ
Earth aid	مساعدة الارض	project	مشروع
organization	منظمة/ مؤسسة	data	بيانات
special	خاص	naturally	طبيعيًا
nature	الطبيعة	link	رابط
wildlife	الحياة البرية	normally	طبيعيًا / بشكل طبيعى
urban locations	مواقع حضرية (المدن والاحياء)	carefully	بحرص
movie theater	دار عرض سينمائى	living things	كائنات حية
competition	مسابقة	once	مرة واحدة
region	منطقة	snack	وجبة خفيفة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
collect	يجمع	collected
click	ينقر / يضغط زر	clicked
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
offer	يعرض / يقدم	offered
look after	يعتنى بـ	looked after
relax	يسترخى	relaxed
enter	يدخل	entered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
understand	يفهم	understood
find out	يكتشف/ يعرف	found out
become	يصبح	became
drive	يقود	drove



Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

over time	بمرور الوقت	work hard	يعمل بجد

Help your child to know about Mini forest organization. ساعد طفلك أن يعرف عن مؤسسة الغابة الصغيرة.



Study the following

1. Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our city.
   - الغابة الصغيرة هي منظمة تزرع مساحات صغيرة من الأشجار في وسط مدينتنا.

2. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife.
   - تساعد هذه المناطق الخضراء الخاصة الناس على الاستمتاع بالطبيعة وتساعد الحياة البرية.

3. We never grow foreign plants in our projects.
   - نحن لا نزرع نباتات أجنبية (غير اصلية المنشأ) أبدًا في مشاريعنا.

4. We always plant trees that grow naturally in an area.
   - نحن دائمًا نزرع الأشجار التي تنمو بشكل طبيعي في منطقة ما.

5. We also usually work with local communities to plant and look after the forests.
   - عادة ما نعمل أيضًا مع المجتمعات المحلية لزراعة الغابات والاعتناء بها.

6. We collect data from every forest.
   - نقوم بجمع البيانات من كل غابة.

7. This helps us understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.
   - يساعدنا هذا في فهم تأثيرات المساحة الخضراء الجديدة على الأشخاص والحياة البرية و مناخ المنطقة.

8. We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects.
   - نادرًا ما يكون لدينا عدد كافٍ من المتطوعين لمساعدتنا في مشاريعنا.

9. We are always happy when people offer to help us.
   - نسعد دائمًا عندما يعرض الناس مساعدتنا.

10. Click on the link to find out more.
    - انقر على الرابط لمعرفة المزيد.



استمع إلى النص:



Tapescript نص الاستماع

Home - About - Join us - Latest News - Contact us



Earth Aid

What is Mini Forest?

Mini Forest is an organization(1) which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities.
These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife - like plants, animals, and other living things.
At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations(2) for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.
We never grow foreign(3) plants in our projects(4), we always plant trees that grow naturally(5) in an area and we carefully(6) look after them until they become a small forest.
We also usually work with local communities(7) to plant and look after the forests over time(8).
We collect data(9) from every forest we plant a few times a month. This helps us understand the effects(10) of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.
We rarely have enough volunteers(11) to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us. Click(12) on the link(13) to find out more.

Arabic Meaning

١- مؤسسة
٢- مواقع حضرية (فى المدن)
٣- أجنبى (غير اصلى المنشأ)
٤- مشاريع
٥- طبيعيًا
٦- بعناية
٧- مجتمعات محلية
٨- بمرور الوقت
٩- بيانات
١٠- تأثيرات
١١- متطوعين
١٢- انقر
١٣- الرابط

Listen and read again. Write T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences in your notebook :

استمع واقرأ مرة آخرى. ضع (✓) أو (✗). صحح الجمل الخطأ فى كراستك.

1. The new green spaces help people and animals. ________
2. Mini Forest only plants trees that don't normally live in that country. ________
3. Mini Forest volunteers help to look after the trees. ________
4. The organization uses information about the forests for research. ________
5. The Mini Forest organization wants more people to join and help. ________

Tapescript نص الاستماع


استمع إلى النص:

Nadine : What do you usually do on weekends, Gameela?

Gameela : I usually spend time with my sisters. We often go shopping[1] in the city center, or we sometimes go to the movie theater. What about you?

Nadine : I don't very often go into the city. I usually stay at home and help my mom, but I sometimes visit my grandparents with my sister, Injy, and her kids.

Gameela : Where do your grandparents[2] live, Nadine?

Nadine : They live in the countryside on a farm. It's near a city called Assuit. Do you know it? It's on the River Nile.

Gameela : Assuit? That's a long way from here. How often do you see them?

Nadine : About once[3] a month. My sister can drive so she usually takes me in her car. And we always try to meet up for the holiday at Eid Al-Adha too. We usually stay for a week at their house then.

Gameela : I love Eid Al-Adha! We always meet up with my mom's family for the holiday. They are all great cooks[4] and we always eat a lot!

Nadine : That sounds great!

Gameela : What about this weekend, Nadine? Are you busy?

Nadine : Not really. Do you want to do something together?

Gameela : Yes, let's go to that new café in our neighborhood. It's near the square[5].

Nadine : Yes, OK. It looks nice and they've got delicious date and honey cakes! Saturday afternoon?

Gameela : Yes, that sounds great[6]. I'll text you.

Arabic Meaning

١- يذهب للتسوق
٢- الريف
٣- مرة واحدة
٤- طهاه
٥- الميدان
٦- يبدو رائعاً

Lesson 2 Part 2 ★ We always work hard

Language focus

قواعد لغوية

The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

◉ نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات وافعال روتينية وحقائق علمية.

- He usually goes to school by bus.

1 Form

◉ يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من

I / We / You / They + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It + inf. + (s-es-ies)

- I visit my cousins every week.
- She helps her mom every day.

2 Negative

I / We / You / They + don't / never + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It + doesn't + inf. /never + inf. + (s-es-ies)

- We don't go to school on Friday.
- He doesn't live in a city.

◉ لاحظ عند استخدام never فى النفى مع He / She / It يبقى الفعل كما هو باضافة (s).

- She never uses a laptop

(كلمة استفهام) Do + I / we / you / they + inf. مصدر الفعل?

(كلمة استفهام) Does + he / she/ it + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- When do you get up?
- I get up early.
- What does she need?
- She needs her glasses.

◉ للسؤال بمعنى هل نبدا السؤال ب Does / Do

- Do you like pizza?
- Yes, I do. ◉إجابة مثبتة:
- No, I don't. ◉إجابة منفية:
- Does Ahmed see his friends on weekends?
- Yes, he does. ◉إجابة مثبتة:
- No, he doesn't. ◉إجابة منفية:

Help your child to know about the present simple. ساعد طفلك أن يعرف عن المضارع البسيط.

Adverbs of frequency  ظروف التكرار

◉ تنقسم ظروف التكرار إلى ظروف محددة (Definite) أى أنها تحدد عدد مرات حدوث الفعل .... مثل: once / twice

وهناك ظروف غير محددة (Indefinite) وهى لا تحدد عدد المرات ولكن توضح نسبة حدوث الفعل من:

Always (100%) —إلى→ Never (0%)

Indefinite	غير محدد
always	دائما
usually	عادة
often	غالبا
sometimes	احيانا
rarely	نادرا
never	ابدا

Definite	محددة
once	مرة
twice	مرتين
three times	ثلاث مرات
every day / week	كل يوم / اسبوع

0% never — rarely — sometimes — often — usually — always 100%

◉ نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن نسبة / عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

◉ تاتى ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الاساسى وبعد فعل يكون (Verb to be).

- We always work hard at school.
- The weather is always cold in London.

◉ للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل نستخدم:

How often do/does + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

- How often do you play football? - كم عدد المرات التى تلعب بها كرة القدم؟

◉ للإجابة عن السؤال السابق نستخدم ظروف التكرار المحددة وغير المحددة.

- How often do you study English?
- I usually study English.
- How often does she go to the club?
- She goes to the club once a week.

1 Circle the correct answers: ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The weather is **usually / never** sunny in Egypt in summer.
2. I **rarely / often** eat dates as a snack – I love them!
3. **How often / How ever** do you play football with your friends?
4. Samer **always / never** plays video games. He doesn't like them.
5. We **sometimes / always** go cycling on holiday, but most days we relax on the beach.

6. You **rarely / sometimes** call me so late at night. Is something wrong?
7. Dr Mohsen is **never / always** late to work. He likes to be at the hospital on time.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences in your notebook:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل فى كراستك.

1. 10 pm / usually / in bed / before / **I'm**

 ----

2. always / **My dad** / a healthy breakfast / in the morning / eats

 ----

3. never / **Donia and Wael** / late / are / for school

 ----

4. the dentist / you / go / **How** / do / often / to / ?

 ----

5. gives / sometimes / us / **Our teacher** / homework / on weekends

 ----

6. rains / **It** / the Western Desert / rarely / in

 ----

3 Circle the correct adverb in each sentence:

ضع دائرة حول الظرف الصحيح فى كل جملة :

1. We don't like fish at all. We **often / never** eat it.
2. Date palm trees **usually / never** produce fruit.
3. My aunt lives with us, so I **often / rarely** speak to her.
4. I **sometimes / never** do my homework in the afternoon, but I prefer to do it in the evening.
5. Hani **rarely / often** plays football. He doesn't like sports.
6. My father **sometimes / always** drives me to work. It's very far and there is no train or bus there.

4 Complete the paragraph with the time expressions from the box:

اكمل الفقرة بالعبارات الزمنية التى بالقائمة :

every day - once a week - twice a week - three times a year

My sister, Dalia, plays basketball ❶ ------------, on Tuesdays and Thursdays. She has a gymnastics lesson ❷ ------------, on Saturdays. She also practices her gymnastics ❸ ------------ after school – she never misses a day! ❹ ------------, in June and December, there's a big gymnastics competition in our region. Dalia always enters! Go Dalia!



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. To get information, click on the .... below. كفر الشيخ (2023)

a area b climate c logo d link

2. A .... is an organization which plants small areas of trees.

a club b Mini Forest c data d nature

3. I play video games .... a week on Friday and Saturday.

a once b three times c twice d four times

4. He goes to the beach .... a week on Fridays.

a four times b once c twice d three times

5. We collect .... from every forest.

a pens b paper c data d books

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الدقهلية (2023)

wildlife - green - areas - organization - neighborhood

Mini Forest is an organization. It plants small ❶ .... of trees in the middle of cities. These special ❷ .... areas help people enjoy nature. This ❸ .... tries to find the best urban locations, where people and ❹ .... need nature most.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: الفيوم - طامية (2024)

There's an organization called Mini Forest which plants small areas of trees in the middle of cities. These green areas help people enjoy nature and they also help wildlife. They never grow foreign plants in their project. They plant trees that grow naturally in the area. They collect data from every forest to help them understand the effects of the green space on everything.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Mini Forest organization plants small areas of trees in the middle of ....

a deserts b oceans c cities d parks

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

2. They never grow ____________ plants in their project.

a foreign b natural c green d local

3. The Mini Forest helps people enjoy ____________ .

a teacher b nature c desert d zoo

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is the Mini Forest? ________________________________

5. Why do they collect data? ________________________________

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My mom always ____________ **(make)** basbousa. أسيوط (2023)
2. I often ____________ **(sees)** my aunt and uncle. الاسكندرية (2023)
3. They ____________ **(play usually)** computer games on Sundays. القاهرة (2023)
4. I don't ____________ **(visiting)** my grandparents on Fridays. الشرقية (2023)
5. The weather is ____________ **(never)** sunny in Egypt in summer. القليوبية (2023)
6. She always ____________ **(go)** to school early. الشرقية (2023)
7. How often ____________ **(do)** Noha visit Cairo? البحيرة (2023)
8. How ____________ **(long)** do you play video games? Twice a week.
9. Ahmed ____________ **(always)** travels to China. He doesn't go there.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. grow - foreign - never - We - plants - in - our - projects. المنوفية (2023)

____

2. she - does - her - visit - How - often - grandparents? الاسكندرية (2023)

____

3. never - Wael - late - is - for - school. كفر الشيخ (2023)

____

4. wildlife - help - our - Green - areas.

____

5. rarely - We - enough - have - volunteers - help - to - us.

____

6. grow - that - naturally - plant - trees - We.

____

Lesson 3 Part 1 Reading & Pronunciation

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

hang out	يقضى وقت فى مكان / يتسكع	pass through	يمر خلال
miss	يفتقد شخص او مكان	railway line	خط سكة حديد
well	بصحة جيدة	local residents	سكان محليون

Other words كلمات أخرى



species	فصائل / انواع	New York	نيويورك
art works	اعمال فنية	floor	طابق / دور
theater performance	عرض مسرحى	a great view	منظر رائع
noisy	مزعج	green spaces	مساحات خضراء
news	اخبار	no one	لا احد
taste	له مذاق	famous	مشهور
		High Line	خط سريع

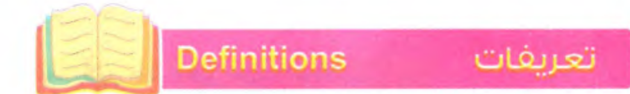
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
create	ينشئ	created
decide	يقرر	decided
pass	يمر	passed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
run	يجرى	ran
think	يفكر	thought
hang out	يتسكع	hung out



Definitions تعريفات

hang out	يقضي وقت/يتسكع	spend time with, relax together
local residents	سكان محليون	people who live in a neighborhood
passes through	يمر خلال	goes from one place to another
miss	يفتقد	feel sad that you can't have or see something
railway line	خط سكة حديد	a road for trains



Study the following

1. **Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view.**
   - تقع شقتنا في الطابق السادس عشر ، لذلك لدينا إطلالة رائعة.

2. **New York has a lot of green spaces.**
   - نيويورك بها الكثير من المساحات الخضراء.

3. **Some local residents decided to make the old railway into a big, long park.**
   - قرر بعض السكان المحليين فكرة لتحويل السكك الحديدية القديمة إلى حديقة طويلة وكبيرة.

4. **It's a green space, with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it!**
   - إنها مساحة خضراء، مع اكثر من ٥٠٠ نوع من النباتات والأشجار!

5. **New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much quieter at night.**
   - نيويورك صاخبة للغاية طوال الوقت. الإسكندرية أكثر هدوءًا في الليل.

6. **There are lots of different restaurants here, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home.**
   - هناك الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة هنا ولكن مذاق الطعام ليس مثل مذاق الطعام في البيت.

7. **I think the food tastes more delicious.**
   - أعتقد أن الطعام طعمه ألذ.

8. **I miss our food so much!**
   - افتقد طعامنا للغاية!



Green cities

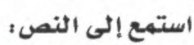
1 What do you like about your neighborhood?

ما الذى تحبه فى حيك السكنى؟

2 Wael is in New York for a year with his family. Read his email. What's Wael's favorite place in New York?

وائل فى نيويورك لمدة عام مع عائلته. أقرأ بريده الاليكترونى. ما هو مكان وائل المفضل فى نيويورك؟

To : samer@email.com
From : waeltawfik@email.com
Subject : Life in New York

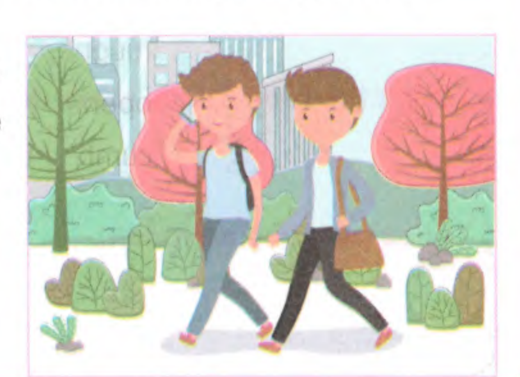
استمع إلى النص:

Arabic Meaning

١- بصحة جيدة
٢- الدور السادس عشر
٣- مساحات
٤- مشاريع
٥- سكان محليون
٦- فصائل - أنواع
٧- أكثر هدوءاً

Hi Samer,

How are you? I'm well[1] and New York is great!
Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor[2], so we have a great view of the city.
New York has a lot of green spaces[3]. There are also projects[4] to create new parks and green spaces in parts of the city that no one uses now, like the famous High Line – do you know about it? Years ago, the High Line was **a railway line**, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some **local residents**[5] then decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space, with more than 500 species[6] of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theatre performance, eat delicious food, go running, or just **hang out** with your friends. I think it's my favorite place in New York. It **passes through** our neighborhood, so I often go there with my parents. Here is one of my photos of it.
How are things in Alexandria? I **miss** home. New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much quieter[7] at night.
There are lots of different restaurants here in New York, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home. I think the food tastes more delicious in Egypt. I miss our food so much!
Write soon and tell me all your news,
Wael



Lesson 3 Part 2 ★ The Selfish Giant

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

selfish giant	العملاق الأنانى	look out of	ينظر الى الخارج من
wonderful	رائع	hole	ثقب/ فتحة
soft	لين/ ناعم	tiny	صغير جدا
wall	جدار/ حائط	suddenly	فجأة
empty	فارغ	branches	فروع
silent	هادئ / صامت	in one corner	فى ركن واحد
sweet	حلو (الطعم)	on their way home	فى طريقهم للمنزل
finally	اخيرًا		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
pass	يمر	passed
share	يشارك	shared
turn	يتحول	turned
cover	يغطى	covered
laugh	يضحك	laughed
open	يفتح	opened
climb up	يتسلق	climbed up
appear	يظهر	appeared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
hear	يسمع	heard
come back	يرجع	came back
build	يبنى	built
sing	يغنى / يغرد	sang



Study the following

1. There are colorful birds singing in the trees. - هناك طيور ملونة تغرد على الأشجار.
2. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.
   - الحديقة الجميلة دائما تجعل الأطفال سعداء.
3. The selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden.
   - لا يريد العملاق الأناني أن يشارك حديقته.
4. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent.
   - تمر الأيام والحديقة دائمًا فارغة وساكنة.
5. The green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees.
   - يتحول العشب الأخضر إلى اللون البني. الأوراق تسقط من الأشجار.
6. Then snow covers the garden and all the little birds and bees fly away.
   - ثم يغطي الثلج الحديقة وتطير جميع الطيور الصغيرة والنحل بعيدًا.
7. Spring arrives in the village. - وصل فصل الربيع للقرية.
8. Everything is under the snow. - يكسو الثلج كل شئ.
9. When you're not selfish good things happen.
   - عندما لا تكون أنانيا فإن الاشياء الجيدة تحدث.

1 Look at the picture. What season is it? Listen and read. Check your answer?

انظر إلى الصورة ما هو الفصل من فصول السنة؟ استمع واقرأ؟ تأكد من إجابتك؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:



In a village, there lives a giant[1] who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful[2] birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.

But the selfish[3] giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play.

Arabic Meaning

١- عملاق
٢- ذات ألوان كثيرة
٣- أناني



The days pass[4] and the garden is always empty and silent[5]. Slowly, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. Then snow covers the garden and all the birds and bees fly away.

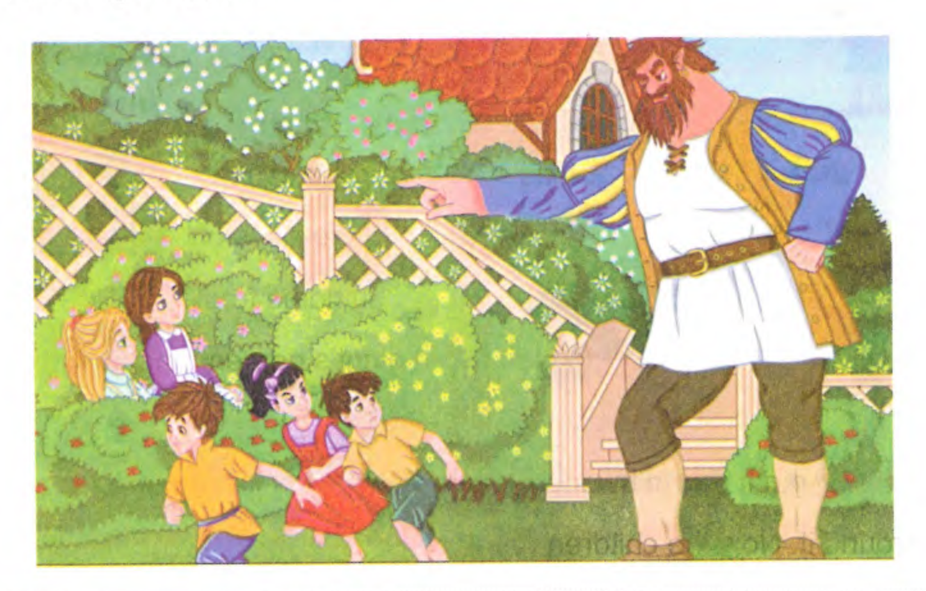
Spring arrives in the village, but in the giant's garden it is still winter. Everything is under the snow. The giant doesn't understand. Usually his garden is beautiful in spring! What is wrong? Then one morning he wakes up and hears a lovely sound.

٤- يمر
٥- ساكن/هادئ
٦- ثقب/فتحة
٧- تتفتح
٨- ركن/زاوية
٩- صغيرة جدًا
١٠- فروع

A little blue bird is singing in a tree outside. Then the giant hears another sweet sound - children laughing.

He looks out of the window and sees that the children have come back through a hole[6] in the garden wall. Now they are sitting in the trees. The leaves on the trees are green again and flowers are opening[7] around them. The giant feels so happy to see his garden grow again.

But in one corner[8] of the garden it is still winter. The giant sees a tiny[9] boy standing there. He is too small to climb up into the tree. Suddenly the giant understands everything. "Now I know why spring didn't come," he says, "I think it's because I was selfish about my garden." He goes out and helps the little boy climb up into the tree. Suddenly, all the leaves on the tree open and the birds fly up into its branches[10] and start to sing. "When you're not selfish," the giant says,"good things happen."



Help your child to read a story of The Selfish Giant. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة العملاق الأنانى.



Pronunciation

◉ ندرس فى هذا الدرس نطق حرفى (th) مثل حرف (ث) فى اللغة العربية حيث نخرج اللسان عند نطقه مثل (thin) ونرمز له بالرمز الصوتي /θ/.

◉ وندرس نطق حرف (S) حيث نستخدم الاسنان الامامية ولا نخرج اللسان مثل sing ونرمز له بالرمز الصوتي /s/ .

th /θ/

think يفكر	thumb اصبع الابهام
throw يرمى	mouth فم
bath يستحم	thirsty عطشان
thunder رعد	thin رفيع

S /s/

grass عشب	sand رمل
mouse فأر	sick مريض
seed بذرة	sing يغنى
bus اتوبيس	stalk ساق النبات
sunset غروب الشمس	six رقم (٦)
sunny مشمس	sky السماء

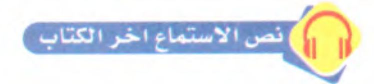
th

path	طريق
thing	شئ
thick	سميك
thanks	شكرا
threaten	يهدد
through	خلال

s

so	لذلك
pass	يمر
soft	ناعم / لين
selfish	انانى

1 Listen and circle the word you hear? استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التى تسمعها:



1. a thick b sick
2. a throw b so
3. a path b pass
4. a mouth b mouse
5. a thing b sing

2 Listen and complete the words with (s) or (th): استمع واكمل الكلمات:

1. – eed	2. – – irsty	3. – talk
4. – – anks	5. ba – –	6. bu –
7. – oft	8. – elfish	9. – – rough

3 Listen, read and repeat: استمع واقرأ وردد:

1. I think I have six thick thumbs.
2. The thin mouse thinks it's sick.
3. The sunset sky is sunny, but thunder threatens.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. I read and buy books at the ....

a restaurant b library c park d garden

2. They go .... at the shopping center.

a swimming b shopping c playing d eating

3. There are .... restaurants in the city.

a a few b lots of c much d small

4. The food is .... at the restaurants.

a bad b tasty c ugly d salty

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. ------------- means to spend time and relax together. المنوفية (2023)

a Pass through b Hang out c Think d Like

2. A ------------- is very big. القليوبية (2023)

a giant b little c small d tiny

3. We went to the museum and ------------- through big gates.

a slept b built c passed d missed

4. Egypt is creating a new ------------- line for the train station.

a airport b ferry c pool d railway

5. A lot of local ------------- in Aswan work in tourism. المنوفية - أشمون (2023)

a residents b tourists c farmers d fishermen

6. When we have free time, we can just ------------- out and have a good time.

a miss b hang c pass d taste

7. When I went on holiday, I ------------- my friends. البحيرة - حوش عيسى (2023)

a lived b hated c missed d sold

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our neighborhood is the place where we live. Our neighborhood has a nice park where people go to relax and enjoy nature. People love parks because they provide them with fresh air and green spaces. We have a bus stop close by, so people don't have to travel far for transportation. Grocery stores are near so everyone can buy what they need. Neighbors should be careful about what **they** do around other neighbors. I am happy living here because it is a safe place. People around me are friendly and helpful. I feel comfortable when I walk along the streets. There are many things to do in this neighborhood. I enjoy going out for walks and spending time with friends. I also like watching movies and playing sports. We should always try to keep our neighborhood clean.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is mainly about your ....
   a restaurant b park c neighborhood d grocery store
2. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....
   a neighbors b parks c bus stop d banks
3. Grocery stores are .... so everyone can buy things they need.
   a far b near c bad d ugly

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why do people love parks?

....

5. What should we do for our neighborhood?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. have - a wonderful - garden - They. الدقهلية (2023)

....

2. sixteenth - is - on - the - Our - floor - apartment.

....

3. spaces - has - a lot - of - New York - green .

....

4. our - I - food - so - miss - much!

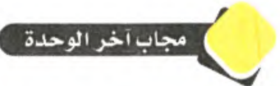
....

5. grass - green - turns - brown - The.

- -

5 Write an email of (50) words to your friend, Samy to tell him about your neighborhood: اكتب ايميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your name is Kareem and your email address is kareem@gmail.com
and your friend's email address is samy@hotmail.com



many places - friendly

To:

From:

Subject:

- - - - - - - - -

- - - - - - - - -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- - - - - - - - -

- - - - - - - - - - - - -

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden

- -

Lesson 4 ★ Writing



استمع إلى المفردات:



Key vocabulary

The Meadows	حديقة عامة كبيرة في إدنبره ، اسكتلندا
third floor	الدور الثالث
the other side	الجانب الاخر
a great view	منظر رائع
distance	مسافة
Edinburgh Castle	قلعة إدنبره
warm	دافئ
especially	خصوصا
For example	على سبيل المثال
Scottish	اسكتلندى الجنسية
porridge	عصيدة (طعام تحلية)
honey	عسل
family tradition	تقليد عائلى

Study the following

1. **How are things with you?**
   - كيف حالك؟
2. **Our apartment is in the city center.**
   - شقتنا في وسط المدينة.
3. **It's on the third floor.**
   - إنها في الطابق الثالث.
4. **We have a great view over the trees.**
   - لدينا إطلالة رائعة على الأشجار.
5. **People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends.**
   - يستخدم الناس الحديقة كثيرًا لممارسة الرياضة ومقابلة الاصدقاء.
6. **There are lots of things I miss about Egypt.**
   - هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي أفتقدها في مصر.
7. **Scottish food is OK but Egyptian food is better!**
   - الطعام الاسكتلندي جيد لكن الطعام المصري أفضل!
8. **For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge.**
   - على سبيل المثال ، يأكل الكثير من الاسكتلنديين العصيدة فى الافطار.
9. **I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames!**
   - أفتقد جدا إفطاري المصري المفضل ، الفول المدمس!
10. **The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school.**
    - الناس هنا لطيفون ولدي الكثير من الأصدقاء الجُدد في المدرسة.



How to write an informal email
كيف تكتب إيميل غير رسمى

◉ ندرس فى هذا الدرس كيفية كتابة البريد الاليكترونى غير الرسمى حيث يبدا بـ

1. Opening phrase عبارة افتتاحية

- Hello
- Hi,

2. A friendly expression تعبير ودود

- Hey! How are you doing?
- How are things with you?
- How's it going?
- What's up with you?
- I hope you're well.
- Or if you are responding to an email that your friend sent you, you could say:

◉ اما إذا كان الإيميل ردًا على إيميل سابق نقول:

- Thanks for your email.
- It was great to hear from you.
- I enjoyed reading your email.

3. Opening sentence جملة افتتاحية

- I just wanted to let you know...
- I'm writing because...

4. Informal expressions عبارات غير رسمية

- a really cool park,
- Hope you're doing well!

5. A request to reader طلب من القارئ

- Please write back soon

6. Closing phrase عبارة ختامية

- Lots of love
- See you soon!
- Can't wait to hear about ....
- Love, [your name]
- All the best, [your name]

Help your child to write an informal email. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب بريدًا إلكترونياً غير رسمى.



Example:

To: ramy@gmail.com

From: hassan@yahoo.com

Subject: Birthday party

Hi Ramy,
How's it going?
Thanks for sending me the photos of your holiday. It looks like you had a great time! How's your family? And what about your pet?
I'm sorry that I couldn't get to your birthday party. I was really busy. Thanks for the invitation.
Can you send me some photos from the party? I'd love to see how it all went.
I can't wait until you come to visit in March. Do you know how long you'll stay?
I'll try to think of some fun things to do.
See you soon.
All the best,
Hassan

1 Read Donia's email to her friend Laila in Luxor. What two things does she miss about Egypt?

اقرأ البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بـ(دنيا) لصديقتها (ليلى) فى الأقصر. اكتب شيئين تفتقدهم (ليلى) في مصر.

She misses the .... **and the** ....

To: laila@egyptmail.com

From: donia@qwikmail.com

Subject: My new life in Scotland

Hi Laila,
How are things with you?
I'm finally in Scotland with Mom, Dad, and Hani. It's really interesting!
Our apartment is in the city center, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends, so there's always something to see there. In the distance we can see the famous Edinburgh Castle, too!
I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt - the warm, sunny weather (it's never hot here) and especially the food! Scottish food is OK but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but I don't really like it! I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames!
The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. I often go to my friend Rhona's house after school. We study together and sometimes we watch TV – in English!
Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.
Lots of love,
Donia



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I have a lot of new .... at school. I love them all.

   a friends   b tomatoes   c legs   d apartments

2. In Egypt, most people eat .... for breakfast.

   a carrots   b tomatoes   c ful medames   d pens

3. I don't meet my friend for a long time. I .... him so much.

   a see   b miss   c draw   d stop

4. Our apartment is .... the third floor.

   a in   b on   c of   d for

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. are - with - How - you - things?

   ----

2. center - is - in - the - city - Our - apartment. القليوبية (2023)

   ----

3. third - on - the - It's - floor.

   ----

4. trees - have - a great - view - We - over - the.

   ----

5. usually - They - it - make - milk - with. المنوفية - تلا (2023)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



3 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Amir to tell him about the things you miss about Egypt: اكتب ايميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your name is Waleed and your email address is waleed@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is amir@gmail.com



food - people

To: ______________________

From: ______________________

Subject: ______________________

- - - - - - - - - -

- - - - - - - - - -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- - - - - - - - - -

- - - - - - - - - - - - - -

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. how's your family

- -

2. egyptian food is good

- -

Review

Key vocabulary


apartment block عمارة سكنية


chemicals مواد كيميائية


harvest يحصد


plant يزرع


natural fertilizer سماد طبيعى


roof سطح

Fruit and vegetables فاكهة وخضروات

potatoes	بطاطس	tomatoes	طماطم
peppers	فلفل	pineapple	اناناس
onions	بصل	dates	بلح
lettuce	خس	lemons	ليمون

Mini forest	غابة صغيرة	selfish giant	العملاق الأنانى
organization	منظمة/ مؤسسة	the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية
special	خاص	foreign	اجنبى
nature	الطبيعة	hang out	يقضى وقت / يتسكع
wildlife	الحياة البرية	miss	يفتقد شخص او مكان
railway line	خط سكة حديد	well	بصحة جيدة
local residents	سكان محليون		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
click	ينقر / يضغط زر	clicked
pass	يمر	passed
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled
share	يشارك	shared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
find out	يكتشف / يعرف	found out
become	يصبح	became
drive	يقود	drove
build	يبني	built
sing	يغني / يغرد	sang
hang out	يتسكع	hung out

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

◎ نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات وافعال روتينية وحقائق علمية.

	Statement جملة	Negative نفي	Question سؤال
I / We / You / They	+ inf. مصدر الفعل	+ don't / never + inf.	Do + فاعل + inf.?
He / She / It	+ inf. + (s-es-ies)	+ doesn't + inf. /never + inf. + (s-es-ies)	Does + فاعل + inf.?

- He usually goes to school by bus.
- I visit my cousins every week.
- We don't go to school on Friday.
- He doesn't live in a city.
- Do you like pizza?
- Yes, I do. ◎إجابة مثبتة: - No, I don't. ◎إجابة منفية:
- Does Ahmed see his friends on weekends?
- Yes, he does. ◎إجابة مثبتة: - No, he doesn't. ◎إجابة منفية:

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار



Always (100%) —إلى→ Never (0%)

Indefinite غير محدد	
always	دائما
usually	عادة
often	غالبا
sometimes	احيانا
rarely	نادرا
never	ابدا

Definite محدد	
once	مرة
twice	مرتين
three times	ثلاث مرات
every day / week	كل يوم / اسبوع

◎ نستخدم ظروف التكرار للاجابة عن سؤال How often:

- How often do you play football?

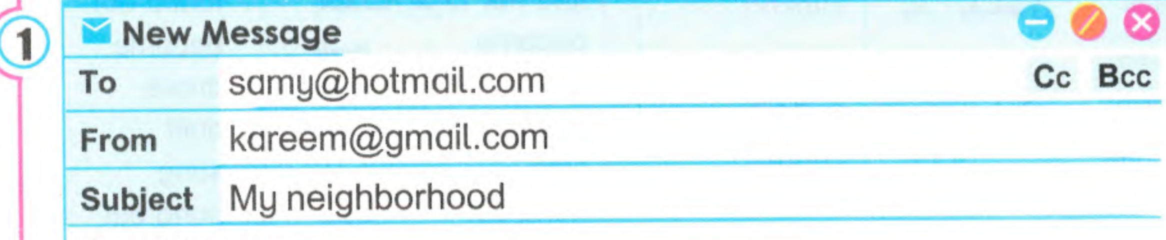
I play football twice a week. \ I sometimes play football.



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to Paragraphs / Emails

Lesson 3



1

New Message

To samy@hotmail.com **Cc** **Bcc**

From kareem@gmail.com

Subject My neighborhood

Dear Samy,

How are you?

I'd like to tell you about my neighborhood. My neighborhood isn't very big but there are many places here. There is one park where we can have fun and practice sports. I have lunch at a nice restaurant that serves delicious food. Our neighbors are helpful and friendly. Our neighborhood is clean because we look after it. We put trash in bins and we plant trees and flowers.

See you soon,

Yours,

Kareem

Lesson 4

2

New Message

To amir@gmail.com **Cc** **Bcc**

From waleed@yahoo.com

Subject Things I miss about Egypt

Hi Amir,

How's it going? I hope you're well.

I just want to tell you about my visit to England.

I traveled to England two weeks ago. I like England, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt – the warm, sunny weather and the food! English food is OK but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of English people eat sausages, eggs (fried or boiled) and toast. I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames and falafel!

Please write back soon

Lots of love

Waleed

Al-Azhar Test

My apartment

3 Our apartment is on the third floor. We have a great view of the city. Cairo has a lot of green areas. There are a lot of plants and trees. There are lots of restaurants here.

Test Unit 1

Your community garden

4 We have a community garden in our neighborhood. A community garden is a big green space. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. We grow vegetables and fruit. We sometimes sell them in the market. This garden helps clean the air in the city and it is a great place to meet people and make friends.

Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

sell - them - grow - do - look

Ahmed : Good morning, Assem.
Assem : Good morning, Ahmed.
Ahmed : Do you 1 ---------------- vegetables and fruits in your garden?
Assem : Yes, I 2 --.
Ahmed : What do you do with 3 ------------------------------?
Assem : We usually eat or 4 -------------------- them in the market.
Ahmed : You should 5 -------------------------- after these trees.
Assem : You are right.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	thirsty	thin	sick	bus	-----
2	always	play	usually	sometimes	-----
3	potatoes	onions	roof	lemons	-----
4	harvest	plant	apartment	play	-----
5	silent	empty	forest	sunny	-----

3 Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We often ------------- fish.
   a eat b eating c eats d doesn't eat
2. Early spring is the best season to ------------- seeds in the ground.
   a harvest b sell c plant d play
3. The weather is usually ------------- in Egypt in summer.
   a cold b rainy c sunny d small
4. I ------------- often see my school friends at weekends.
   a don't b doesn't c didn't d 'm not

5. There's a/an .... line near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now.

a railway b airport c bus stop d taxi

6. We use .... to kill insects that eat the crops.

a plants b crops c chemicals d potatoes

7. We .... vegetables in the market.

a play b sell c feed d burn

8. They don't like fish at all. They .... eat it.

a always b often c never d once

9. We .... unhealthy food.

a never eat b eats never c eats d doesn't eat

10. New York .... a lot of green spaces.

a have b has c don't have d are

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

My name is Ahmed. There are four people in my family. My father, my mother, my sister and me. My mother goes shopping every week. We have a roof garden. We plant onions, tomatoes and potatoes. Sometimes we plant fruit. We use natural fertilizer. Roof gardens help clean the air in the city.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How many people are there in the family?

....

2. When does the mother go shopping?

....

3. How does the roof garden help the city?

....

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. We plant onions and .... (lemons - dates - tomatoes)

5. We use .... fertilizer. (natural - normal - chemical)

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. nature - areas - people - Green - enjoy - help.

---

2. grow - lemons - do - Where - you?

---

3. all - like - We - fish - at - don't.

---

4. floor - third - It's - the - on.

---

5. have - a great - We - the - over - trees - view.

---

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

My apartment

floor - view - green - areas - trees

Test on Unit 1



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hala has two ....

   a sisters   b brothers   c pens   d books

2. Hala lives in the ....

   a village   b city   c street   d

3. Hala doesn't like going to the ....

   a cinema   b park   c school   d restaurant

4. Hala helps her mum on ....

   a Saturday   b Sunday   c Monday   d Friday

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. You can use old coffee as a natural ------------- for plants in your garden.

   a trunk   b stalk   c fertilizer   d chemical

2. I prefer to eat fruit that is natural and organic with no------------- . SB

   a water   b taste   c chemicals   d delicious

3. The Nile Delta has very fertile farming areas and the people ------------- rice there every year.

   a harvest   b destroy   c turn   d look

4. ------------- are people who work without getting money.

   a Engineers   b Farmers   c Volunteers   d Teachers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الاسكندرية (2023)

volunteers - market - tomorrow - green - vegetables

We need more community gardens. The community garden is a big ❶ ------------- space on the roof of an apartment block. The people who work are all ❷ ------------- from the neighborhood. They grow ❸ ------------- to eat and sometimes they sell them in the ❹ -------------,too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: القاهرة (2023)

I'm Maha. I'm 14 years old. On holidays, I help my family and my friends at our community garden. On the roof of our apartment block, we have a big green space. people in the neighborhood volunteer to help and **grow** vegetables with us to eat.

We usually grow tomatoes, peppers, onions and lettuce. Sometimes, we also plant fruit trees like lemons and dates. It's amazing to grow your own food.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**grow**" means ....
   a draw   b cut   c plant   d need
2. The main idea of the text is ....
   a healthy habits   b community garden
   c sports   d my favorite game
3. Lemons and .... are the fruit trees they plant.
   a lettuce   b dates   c potatoes   d mangoes

B. Answer the following questions:

4. How do people help at the community garden?

   ....

5. When does Maha help her family?

   ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. are - neighbors - and - Our friendly - helpful.

   ....

2. do - farmers - rice - Where - grow? أسيوط (2023)

   ....

3. miss - food - I - so - much - our!

   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Nada sometimes .... (watch) football matches on TV.

2. He .... (never is) late for school.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i love my country egypt

----

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your community garden

Guiding phrases

green space - plant trees



I discover myself

We are all different

نحن جميعًا مختلفون



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, and write about people's personalities.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب عن السمات الشخصية للناس.

2. Make clear what people, places, and things I'm talking about using who, which and where.

- يوضح الطالب عن من يتكلم اشخاص أو اماكن أو اشياء باستخدام which, who, where.

3. Describe my own and other people's feelings.

- يصف الطالب ما يشعر به وما يشعر به الآخرين.

4. Say the sounds / ʌ / and /æ/.

- يقول الطالب الأصوات / æ / و / ʌ /.

5. Write a paragraph explaining the positive and negative qualities of something.

- يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن الصفات الايجابية والسلبية لشيء ما.

6. Make a leaflet about your school.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل نشرة توضيحية عن مدرسته.

Lesson 1 ★ He's very clever

Key vocabulary

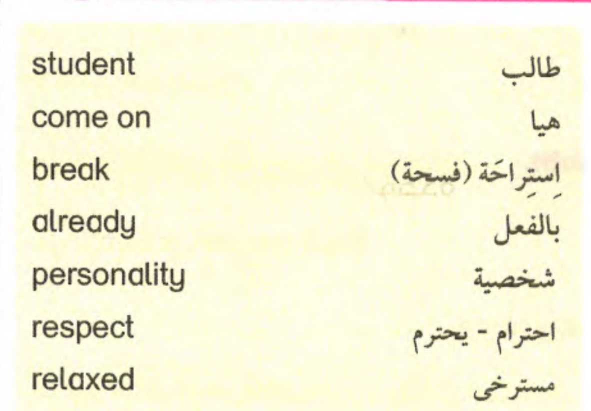


استمع إلى المفردات:

Adjectives صفات

nervous	متوتر	clever = intelligent	ماهر - شاطر / ذكى
calm = quiet	هادئ	messy	فوضوي / غير منظم
shy	خجول	kind	عطوف
polite	مؤدب	friendly	ودود
organized = tidy	منظم - مرتب	helpful	متعاون - مساعد- مفيد
nice	لطيف -جميل	funny	مضحك - مرح

Other words كلمات أخرى



student	طالب	textbooks	الكتب الدراسية
come on	هيا	extra	اضافي / زائد
break	إستراحَة (فسحة)	copy	نسخة
already	بالفعل	worksheet	ورقة الأسئلة
personality	شخصية	really	حقا / جدًا
respect	احترام - يحترم	take you around	يأخذك فى جولة
relaxed	مسترخى	friend	صديق

Definitions تعريفات

friendly	ودود	nice to others, helpful
shy	خجول	worried about talking to people, quiet
clever	ذكي / ماهر	intelligent, good at school work
polite	مؤدب	speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect
messy	فوضوي	not tidy or organized
organized	مرتب / منظم	tidy, careful
nervous	متوتر	not calm, worried

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
stay	يبقي/ يظل	stayed
worry	يقلق	worried
ask	يسأل	asked
share	يشارك	shared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
show	يعرض/ يبين	showed
take	يأخذ	took
feel	يشعر	felt
meet	يقابل	met



Study the following

1. You look worried. Is everything OK?
   - يبدو عليك القلق. هل كل شئ على ما يرام؟
2. Let's go meet some of my friends.
   - هيا بنا نقابل بعض من أصدقائي.
3. I feel a bit nervous and shy.
   - اشعر انني متوتر وخجول قليلا.
4. Don't worry, We are all very friendly.
   - لا تقلق، كلنا ودودين.
5. He's very clever and he's good at math.
   - هو ماهر (شاطر) جدا وجيد في الرياضيات.
6. Do you have all your books yet?
   - هل استلمت كل الكتب الدراسية؟
7. I'm not sure which textbooks I already have.
   - انا غير متأكد اي من الكتب الدراسية التى استلمتها.
8. We can share my book today.
   - من الممكن ان نتشارك كتابي اليوم.
9. I have an extra copy of the worksheets.
   - لدي نسخة اضافية من ورقة الاسئلة.
10. Wow! You're really organized.
    - رائع. انت منظم للغاية.
11. Come on, I'll show where the science classroom is.
    - هيا سوف اريك مكان حجرة الفصل الخاصة بمادة العلوم.
12. We should help him make friends.
    - يجب أن نساعده ليكون صداقات.



1 Listen and read. How does Hazem feel today? Why?

استمع واقرا : كيف يشعر حازم اليوم؟لماذا؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:


Asser : Hi, Hazem. I'm Asser. You look worried(1). Is everything OK?

Hazem : Hi, Asser! It's my first day at school and I feel a **bit**(2) **nervous** and **shy**.

Asser : Don't worry, we are all **friendly**. I can help you get to know the school.

Hazem : Really! Can you?

Asser : Sure. I can take you around, show you where your classroom is, and stay with you at break(3)! Let's go meet some of my friends. Look! There's Basel. Hey, Basel!

Basel : Hi, Asser!

Asser : Hazem, this is Basel. He's very **clever**(4) and he's good at math. You can ask him if you need any help with your homework! Basel, this is Hazem. He's starting school here today.

Basel : Hi, Hazem. Welcome to our school.

Asser : He's so **polite**!(5)

Basel : Thanks. Do you have all your books yet, Hazem?

Hazem : I'm not sure(6). I have a lot of books in my room at home but I'm a bit **messy**. I'm not sure which textbooks(7) I already have.

Basel : We can share my book today. And I have an extra copy of the worksheets ...

Hazem : Wow! You're really **organized**(8). Thanks, Basel!

Asser : Come on, I'll show where the science classroom is.

Arabic Meaning

١- قلق
٢- قليلاً
٣- فسحة/راحة
٤- ماهر - شاطر
٥- مؤدب
٦- متأكد
٧- كتب دراسية
٨- منظم - مُرتب

2 Read again and answer:

اقرأ مرة اخري وأجب عن الاسئلة؟

1. How does Asser help Hazem? Why?

---

2. Who is Basel?

---

3. What does Basel offer to share with Hazem?

---

3 Look at the bold words in the text. Match them to their meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات المكتوبة بخط ثقيل فى النص. صل كل كلمة بمعناها :

A	B
1 friendly	a. not tidy or organized
2 shy	b. nice to others, helpful
3 clever	c. tidy, careful
4 polite	e. intelligent, good at school work
5 messy	e. not calm, worried
6 organized	f. worried about talking to people, quiet
7 nervous	g. speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect

4 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 3.

أكمل الجمل من التمرين رقم ٣.

1. Sarah is very friendly . She likes talking to people.
2. Hani is very .... He shows respect to everyone.
3. Salma is never .... She is calm and relaxed.
4. Salah is .... There are lots of books and clothes on his bedroom floor.
5. If a new student is ...., we should help him make friends.

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

The way you move gives other people information about your personality. Each person has a different way of moving, just like we each have our own handwriting.
People who move in similar ways often become friends and work well together.

- الطريقة التى تتحرك بها تعطى الناس معلومات عن شخصيتك. لكل شخص طريقة مختلفة للتحرك بالمثل كما أن لكل منا خط يده.
- الاشخاص التى تتحرك بنفس الطريقة عادة يصبحوا اصدقاء ويعملوا معًا بشكل جيد.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Adel is a new .... at El Salam Primary School.

a teacher b student c worker d doctor

2. Hatem is very ....

a bad b clever c ugly d tall

3. Hatem is good at ....

a Arabic b math c English d science

4. Hatem stays with Adel at ....

a gate b break c class d science lab

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. He is very .... He shows respect to everyone. (2023) اسيوط

a lazy b sad c funny d polite

2. Amr is the boy who is my best .... (2023) القليوبية

a mother b friend c sister d teacher

3. Ali is always good at school work. He is .... (2023) الشرقية

a messy b shy c nervous d clever

4. My mother is very .... She's very nice to others. (2023) أسيوط

a clever b nervous c shy d friendly

5. Tasneem is always .... She never worries. (2023) القليوبية

a calm b shy c kind d clever

6. This room isn't tidy. It's really .... (2023) البحيرة

a clean b messy c good d organized

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

7. Sara is always ...., she is worried about talking to people.

(2023) القليوبية

a shy | b friendly | c clever | d messy

8. When I forget my book at school, I can .... my friend's book.

a eat | b share | c sure | d help

9. Jana is ....; she is tidy and careful. (2023) الاسكندرية - إدارة شرق

a shy | b messy | c nervous | d organized

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

respect - help - messy - clever - bad

I'm Sama. I have a lot of friends. My friends are all different. They ❶ .... me do homework. My friend Salma is always ❷ .... She is not tidy or organized. My friend Nadine is good at math. She is very ❸ .... My friend Yara is polite. She shows ❹ .... to everyone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: (2023) الغربية - إدارة طنطا

Eyad is a new student at school. He is thirteen. He feels a bit worried. Adam is Eyad's new friend at school. Adam is going to help Eyad get to know the school. He shows him where his classrooms are. Adam is very clever and he's good at math. Eyad can ask Adam if he needs any help with his homework. Eyad forgot his textbooks because he is a bit **messy**. Adam is very polite. He offers to share his worksheets with Eyad. Eyad now is very happy and quiet.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Adam is Eyad's ....

a father | b brother | c friend | d neighbor

2. The underlined word "**messy**" means ....

a organized | b not tidy | c clever | d not polite

3. Adam offers to share his .... with Eyad.

a room | b pen | c books | d worksheets

B. Answer the following questions:

4. How old is Eyad?

----

5. What is Adam good at?

----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. share - Let's - today, - book - my - Kareem. القليوبية (2023)

----

2. You - have - Do - your - all - books - yet?

----

3. should - We - him - help - friends - make.

----

4. go - meet - Let's - some - friends - my - of.

----

5. to - school - Welcome - our.

----

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i have an extra copy of the worksheets, asser.

----

2. how does Hazem feel today

Lesson 2

★ This is where we study science
★ Language focus

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

website	موقع على الإنترنت	playground	فناء/ ملعب
laboratory	معمل	bench	مقعد طويل (ثابت)
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحى	water fountain	مُبرد مياه
five-a-side football	كرة القدم الخماسية	laptop	كمبيوتر محمول
fantasy	خيالى	physical education	التربية البدنية
IT Building	مبنى تكنولوجيا المعلومات	pharmacy	صيدلية
equipment	معدات	medicine	دواء
experiments	تجارب علمية	spaceship	سفينة فضاء
Gymnasium = Gym	صالة ألعاب رياضة	TV series	مسلسل تليفزيونى

Other words كلمات أخرى



after - school	بعد المدرسة (صفة)	tourist information	معلومات سياحية
ostrich	نعامة	basketball	كرة السلة
court	قاعة	handball	كرة اليد
desktop computer	كمبيوتر مكتبى	gymnastics	الجمباز
Information Technology (IT)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات	pet	حيوان أليف
school subjects	المواد الدراسية	proud of	فخور بـ
department	قسم	popular with	مشهور بـ
of all age groups	من جميع الفئات العمرية	alive	حى (على قيد الحياة)
		result	نتيجة (الامتحان مثلا)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
study	يدرس / يذاكر	studied
borrow	يستلف/ يستعير	borrowed
repeat	يكرر	repeated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
run	يُدير مكان	ran
feel	يشعر	felt
spend	يقضى وقت	spent
hide	يختبئ	hid
take place	يحدث	took place



Study the following

1. We are proud of our new, modern buildings.

- نحن فخورون بالمبانى الجديدة والحديثة الخاصة بنا.

2. Study the map, and find out where the main buildings are.

- ادرس الخريطة واكتشف أين المبانى الرئيسية.

3. Students come here for their information technology lessons.

- يأتى الطلاب إلى هنا من اجل حصص تكنولوجيا المعلومات.

4. This is the place where students study science. - هذا هو المكان حيث يدرس الطلاب العلوم.

5. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories.

- يوجد أربعة فصول ومعملين جديدين.

6. The laboratories have all equipment. - المعامل بها كل المُعدات.

7. This is a large open area where students spend time outside.

- هذه منطقة كبيرة ومفتوحة حيث يقضى التلاميذ الوقت بالخارج.

8. He is the teacher who helps in the garden. - هذا هو المُعلم الذى يساعد بالحديقة.

9. We have over 50 desktop computers which students can borrow.

- لدينا أكثر من (٥٠) خمسون حاسب آلى يستطيع الطلاب استعارتهم.

10. This is the building where you can find our computer classrooms.

- هذا المبنى حيث يمكنك أن تجد الحجرات الدراسية للحاسب الآلى .

Language focus

قواعد لغوية

Relative clauses

اولاً: ضمائر الوصل

A- who, which, where

- نستخدم ضمائر الوصل لإعطاء معلومات عن شخص أو شىء أو مكان ما، ونستخدم هذه الكلمات مع المفرد والجمع. ونستخدم أيضًا هذه الضمائر بدلاً من تكرار الفاعل مرتين.

1 who

- نستخدم (who) بمعنى الذى / التى للمفرد أو الذين / اللاتى للجمع لتحل محل الفاعل العاقل فى الجملة.

- Mr Ahmed is a teacher. He teaches English.
- Mr Ahmed is a teacher who teaches English.

2 which

- نستخدم (which) بمعنى الذى / التى لتحل محل الفاعل غير العاقل (الحيوانات / الأشياء) فى الجملة.

- These are shoes. I wear the shoes at school.
- These are the shoes which I wear at school.



3 where

- نستخدم (where) بمعنى حيث لتحل محل الأماكن فى الجملة.

- This is a building. We do physical education at the building.
- This is the building where we do physical education.

ثانيًا: B- الصفات المنتهية بـ «ed» والصفات المنتهية بـ «ing»

-ed adjectives		-ing adjectives	
excited	متحمس	exciting	مثير
interested in	مهتم بـ	interesting	شيق
surprised	مندهش	surprising	مدهش
bored	شاعر بالملل	boring	ممل
tired	مُتعَب	tiring	مُتعِب

١. نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) للشيئ أو الشخص الذي لديه أو يمتلك الصفة أو ما يشعر به الشخص كما بالمثال:

1. I am excited. انا متحمس!
2. She is interested in science. هي مهتمة بدراسة العلوم.

٢. ولكن نستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) للشيئ أو الشخص المسبب للصفة أو الشيئ المسبب للشعور كما بالمثال:

1. The football game is exciting. كرة القدم لعبة مثيرة. (هنا لعبة كرة القدم هي المسببة للحماس)
2. This TV show is really surprising.

هذا العرض التليفزيوني مدهش جدًا. (هنا العرض التليفزيوني هو المسبب للدهشة).

● قارن الأمثلة لتفهم:

1- I am bored. اشعر بالملل.
 - He is boring. هو شخص ممل. (مسبب للملل)
2- She is tired. هى مُتعَبة. (تشعر بالصفة).
 - This job is tiring. هذه وظيفة مُتعِبة. (تسبب الصفة)

Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. Amr is the mechanic .... fixes cars.
   a which b who c where d whose
2. The film .... I saw yesterday was boring.
   a who b which c whose d where
3. I have a new car .... helps me go to work faster.
   a where b who c when d which
4. A pharmacy is a shop .... we can buy medicine.
   a when b where c who d whose

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس :

1. Is this bike .... (who) you bought?
2. Hamza likes the house .... (when) he was born.
3. I like the English lesson because it is very .... (interested).
4. An ostrich is a big bird .... (who) can't fly.

1 Read the text. Which school subjects are mentioned?

استمع إلى النص:

اقرأ النص. أى مواد دراسية تم ذكرها ؟

El Fouad School

Home About contact

Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are proud of(1). We are proud of our new, modern(2) buildings and we are happy to show them to you. Please study the map and find out where the main(3) buildings are, and what we use them for.

1 The Ahmed Zewail Building

This is the place where students study science. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories(4). These laboratories have all the equipment(5) which classes need to do experiments.

2 The West Court

This is a large open area where students spend time outside. There is a playground and playing field. There are also benches(6) to sit on under the trees and a water fountain(7) if you feel thirsty. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

Arabic Meaning
١- فخور بـ
٢- حديث
٣- رئيسى
٤- معامل
٥- معدات
٦- مقاعد
٧- مبرد مياه

3 The IT Building[8]

This is the building where you can find our computer classrooms. Students come here for their Information Technology lessons. We have over 50 desktop computers, plus laptops and tablets which students can borrow.

٨- مبنى تكنولوجيا المعلومات
٩- صالة الالعاب الرياضية
١٠- الجمباز
١١- الرياضة البدنية
١٢- كرة قدم خماسية
١٣- قسم

4 The 2024 Gym

The yellow building is our new gymnasium[9]. We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics[10] during physical education[11] lessons. There are some teachers who run after-school sports clubs here too, like five-a-side football[12] (Mr Afifi, math department[13]) and tennis (Mrs Manal, French department).



2 Complete the sentences with who, which, or where:

أكمل الجمل باستخدام who ، which ، where:

1. Dalia is the girl ...who...... . sits next to me in the English class.
2. An ostrich is a big bird .... can't fly.
3. This is the street .... my uncle lives.
4. I really love the red flowers .... grow in our garden.
5. The supermarket is the place .... we buy food.

3 Choose the correct adjective to complete the sentence:

اختر الصفة الصحيحة لتكمل الجمل:

1. Hi Fareeda, I'm (surprised) / surprising to see you!
2. The children feel bored / boring when there is nothing to do.
3. His birthday party was excited / exciting. It was a lot of fun.
4. I'm really interested / interesting in Ancient Egypt.
5. I was really tired / tiring last night. I finished my homework late.
6. The results of the students' last test are surprised / surprising.

4 Read the text. Choose the correct word, a, b, or c:

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series ① ----(a)-- is popular with people of all age groups. It's ② --------- because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world ③ -------- humans live because the Earth is now too hot.

The series tells the story of a boy called Frey ④ ------ wants to return to Earth to look for his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy ⑤ ----- finds life on Wanda ⑥ ----------.



He doesn't have many friends but he thinks perhaps his family is still alive, so he decides to hide on a spaceship ⑦ ------ is traveling to Earth. The problem is he doesn't really know where his parents are and he might not find them. I'm ⑧ --------- to see what happens next!

1- (a) which	(b) who	(c) where
2- (a) interesting	(b) interested	(c) interest
3- (a) which	(b) who	(c) where
4- (a) which	(b) who	(c) where
5- (a) which	(b) who	(c) where
6- (a) bored	(b) bore	(c) boring
7- (a) which	(b) who	(c) where
8- (a) exciting	(b) excited	(c) excite



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Omar is a student in primary ....
   - a four
   - b six
   - c five
   - d three
2. Omar likes ....
   - a English
   - b science
   - c math
   - d Arabic
3. Omar likes to play ....
   - a basketball
   - b volleyball
   - c football
   - d tennis
4. Omar doesn't like to play ....
   - a football
   - b basketball
   - c tennis
   - d volleyball

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The children feel .... when there is nothing to do. القليوبية (2023)
   - a bored
   - b boring
   - c excited
   - d exciting
2. We do science experiments in the .... أسيوط (2023)
   - a laboratory
   - b playground
   - c gymnasium
   - d IT building
3. My brother's birthday is today, he is very .... أسيوط (2023)
   - a exciting
   - b interested
   - c excited
   - d boring
4. We play basketball and handball during .... lessons. الاسكندرية (2023)
   - a science
   - b IT
   - c French
   - d physical education
5. We are .... of our school. الدقهلية (2023)
   - a proud
   - b sad
   - c kind
   - d nervous
6. I'm .... in visiting Cairo. سوهاج (2023)
   - a interesting
   - b interests
   - c interested
   - d interest
7. I was really .... last night.
   - a tired
   - b tiring
   - c tire
   - d tyre

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. school - proud - are - We - our - of. الشرقية (2023)

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

2. which - insects - **Bees** - are - make - honey. (2023) القليوبية

3. science - **Where** - you - do - study?

4. birthday - party - was - **His** - exciting.

5. was - really - **I** - tired - last night.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He is .... **(interest)** in Ancient Egypt. (2023) أسيوط
2. The school is a place .... **(who)** we learn. (2023) القليوبية
3. These are the computers .... **(who)** we use for project. (2023) الاسكندرية
4. Dalia is the girl .... **(when)** sits next time. (2023) الاسكندرية
5. Is this the bike .... **(who)** you bought? (2023) القاهرة
6. Today's math lesson was very .... **(interested)**. (2023) سوهاج
7. Ali is my friend .... **(which)** has a pet lizard. (2023) القليوبية
8. The park is a place .... **(who)** he flies his kite. (2023) الشرقية
9. This is the math question .... **(who)** I don't understand. (2023) الغربية
10. I like the house .... **(who)** I was born. (2023) الغربية

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. hani doesn t like math. ....
2. where s the playground, Leila? ....

6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your school

classrooms - playground

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3 ★ Hare gets scared

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


hare
أرنب برى (أرنب كبير)


monkey
قرد


elephant
فيل


mouse
فأر


mice فئران


forest غابة


grass حشائش


stomach معدة

Other words كلمات أخرى



suddenly	فجأة	nobody	لا أحد
noise	ضوضاء	help	مساعدة
voice	صوت (بشرى)	finally	فى النهاية
quickly	بسرعة		

Adjectives صفات

sunny	مشمس	strong	قوى
loud	عالٍ - مرتفع (للصوت)	brave	شجاع
scared	مرعوب	angry	غاضب
afraid	خائف	clever	ذكى / ماهر
delicious	لذيذ		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
remember	يتذكر	remembered
move	يتحرك	moved
shout	يُصيح	shouted
cry	يبكى	cried
laugh	يضحك	laughed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
lie	يرقد	lay
speak	يتحدث	spoke
come in	يدخل	came in
tell	يخبر	told
run away	يهرب	ran away

Study the following

1. It's a sunny day.
   - إنه يوم مشمس.
2. Her stomach makes a loud noise.
   - معدتها تتسبب فى ضوضاء عالية.
3. If you come in. I'll eat you.
   - إذا دخلت، سوف آكلك.
4. The animal which is in her house wants to eat her.
   - الحيوان الذى بمنزلها يريد أن يأكلها.
5. Hare runs to the forest where her clever friend monkey lives.
   - تجرى الأرنبة البرية إلى الغابة حيث يعيش صديقها القرد الذكى.
6. There is an animal in my house, and it wants to eat me!
   - هناك حيوان فى منزلى، ويريد أن يأكلنى.
7. I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal.
   - أنا أكبر وأقوى وأشجع حيوان.
8. Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out.
   - يُفتح باب الأرنبة البرية ويخرج منه فأر صغير.
9. Everybody knows elephants are afraid of mice.
   - يعرف الجميع أن الافيال تخاف من الفئران.
10. Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrot.
    - تَدْخل الأرنبة البرية فى النهاية لتأكل الجزرة الخاصة بها.

1 Listen and read the story. Who is in Hare's house?

استمع واقرأ القصة. من بداخل منزل «الأرنبة البرية»؟



Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



It's a sunny day, and Hare lies in the grass. Suddenly[1], her stomach makes a loud noise[2].

Hare remembers the carrots in her kitchen. She's hungry!

Hare runs back home. But when she gets to her door, she stops. What is that noise? Something is moving inside[3] Hare's house!

"Is somebody there?" asks Hare.

"Stay where you are!" says a loud voice.

Hare is very surprised[4]. Who is in her house? Then the voice speaks again. "Hare, don't come in. If you come in, I'll eat you. Hares are my favorite food."

Hare is very scared[5]. The animal which is in her house wants to eat her. Hare runs to the forest[6] where her clever friend Monkey lives.

Arabic Meaning
١- فجأة
٢- ضوضاء
٣- داخل
٤- مندهش
٥- مرعوب
٦- غابة
٧- يبدو
٨- لذيذ
٩- لا أحد
١٠- بالداخل
١١- فئران
١٢- يهرب

"Monkey, please help me!" says Hare. "There's an animal in my house, and it wants to eat me!"

Monkey looks[7] interested. "An animal? Let's go and see," Monkey says.

They go back to Hare's house. "Who's in there?" shouts Monkey.

A voice answers, "Monkey, don't come in. I'll eat you if you come in. Hares are my favorite food, but monkeys are also delicious[8]."

Monkey and Hare look at each other. They are both very scared. They run to the lake where their friend Elephant lives. "There's an animal which eats hares and monkeys in Hare's house," they tell Elephant. "We need your help!" "Don't worry!" says Elephant. "I'm coming! I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal in the world. Nobody[9] can eat me!"

Elephant goes to Hare's door. "I'm coming in!" he shouts.

"Stop!" says the animal inside[10]. "I'm hungry and I love to eat ..."

"You can't eat me!" shouts Elephant. "I'm the biggest, the strongest ..."

Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. Elephant jumps high in the air! He's very scared. For as everybody knows, elephants are afraid of mice![11] "Help! A mouse! A mouse!" cries Elephant and he quickly runs away[12].

Mouse looks at Hare and Monkey. "I'm sorry," she says. "Are you angry?" Hare and Monkey start to laugh. "No, we're not angry," they say. "Elephant's face was so funny!" The all laugh again. Then Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrots.

Pronunciation

- سوف ندرس فى هذا الدرس الصوتين / æ / و / ʌ /

short (a) / æ / , short (u) / ʌ /

- الصوت /æ/ يسمى (short a) ينطق مثل كلمة cat - hat ويمثل هذا الصوت الحرف (a)

- الصوت /ʌ/ يسمى (short u) وينطق مثل cut ويمثل هذا الصوت الحروف (u أو o)

وفيما يلى تصنيف الكلمات حسب الصوت:

short (a) /æ/	الصوت / æ / القصير	short (u) /ʌ/	الصوت / ʌ / القصير
cat	قطة	cut	يقطع
track	ممشى / مضمار	truck	شاحنة
hat	قبعة	hut	كوخ
bag	حقيبة	bug	حشرة
stack	كومة	stuck	عالق (محشور) / لصَق
ankle	كاحل (قدم)	uncle	عم / خال
animal	حيوان	hungry	جوعان
angry	غاضب	funny	مضحك
happy	سعيد	come	يدخل
		nuts	مكسرات
		duck	بطة
		honey	عسل
		brush	فرشاة
		onion	بصلة

1 Listen and circle the word you hear: استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة:



1. hut / hat
2. bug / bag
3. stuck / stack
4. uncle / ankle

2 Is the sound the same as cat or cut? Listen and check:

هل الصوت مثل (cat) أو (cut) استمع وتأكد:

	cat	cut
1. animal	√	
2. hungry		
3. stomach		
4. funny		
5. angry		
6. come		

3 Listen, read, and repeat:

استمع واقرأ وردد:

- لاحظ الصوتين / ʌ / , /æ/ فى الكلمات الاتية:

Happy Harry has some nuts.

Happy Harry has some nuts and a duck.

Happy Harry has some nuts, a duck,

and some honey.

Happy Harry has some nuts, a duck,

some honey, and a brush.

Happy Harry has some nuts, a duck,

some honey, a brush, and an onion.





Estimating numbers تقريب الأرقام

١- عند تقريب العدد العشرى إلى اقرب رقم:

- إذا كان الرقم المطلوب تقريبه اكبر من 5 او 50 أو 500 .... يقرب الرقم إلى الرقم الأعلى اما إذا كان اصغر من أو يساوى 4 / 49 / 499 يتم تقريبه إلى الرقم الاصغر فمثلاً:

- عند تقريب الرقم 2.66 إلى اقرب رقم فإن العدد 0.66 اكبر من 0.50 ولذلك يقرب الرقم إلى واحد صحيح:

2.66 = 3.00

- عند تقريب الرقم 2.43 إلى اقرب رقم فإن العدد 0.43 اقل من 0.50 لذلك اقرب رقم هو:

2.34 = 2.00

Estimating numbers

1 Work with a partner and read the texts. Discuss اعمل مع زميلك واقرأ النص. ناقش:

Hatem's classroom wall needs painting. The class calculate how much paint they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the measurements. Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need.

يحتاج فصل حاتم الى الطلاء. قام طلاب الفصل بحساب كمية الطلاء المطلوبة. قاموا بقياس الحائط ودونوا القياسات. بحثوا على الانترنت ليعرفوا كم عبوة طلاء سيحتاجونها..

1. How do you think the students calculate how much paint they need?
2. How many liters of paint will they have left over?

Classroom wall measurements
Wall = h 2.66 m x w 7.95 m
الحائط = 2.66 م ارتفاع x 7.95م عرض



When we don't need to calculate exactly, we estimate an approximate number. We can round decimal numbers up or down to the nearest whole number: 2.66 → 3.00 3.95 → 4.00 نقرب الارقام كما درسنا بالاعلى

2 Round these measurements up or down to the nearest whole number

قرب هذه الأرقام لأقرب عدد صحيح:

❶ 2.03 m .... ❷ 12.96 m .... ❸ 1.11 m ....

To estimate how much paint they need, the students round their measurements up to the nearest whole number, then multiply them to estimate the area to paint: 2.66 (→ 3.00) x 7.95 (→ 8.00) = 24 m^2 - لاحظ أن كل رقم تم تقريبه لأقرب عدد صحيح.

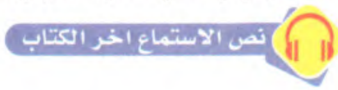
Each can covers 22 square meters, so the students need 2 cans (4 square meters) to cover 24 square meters. They will have at least 20 liters left over.

كل عبوة تغطى ٢٢م٢، لذلك سوف يحتاج التلاميذ إلى عبوتين (٤م٢) لدهان (٢٤م٢). سوف يكون لديهم على الأقل ٢٠ لتر متبقين.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Amr likes ....
   a fruits b vegetables c potatoes d tomatoes
2. Amr eats ....
   a peppers b carrots c chips d rice
3. Amr is scared of ....
   a lions b donkeys c dogs d giraffes
4. Amr likes ....
   a apples b bananas c strawberries d mangoes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

أسيوط (2023)

1. My uncle drives a big, white ....
   a truck b cut c track d stack
2. I'm very .... I want to eat.
   a hungry b thirsty c angry d nervous
3. There's someone here, I can hear his / her ....
   a hand b voice c face d finger
4. My grandpa tells us funny stories. He makes me ....
   a laugh b eat c see d angry
5. The .... is the biggest land animal.
   a mouse b elephant c ant d lizard

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

smallest - biggest - clever - eats - tallest

There are lots of animals in the forest. The elephant is the 1 ------------- animal. The mouse is the 2 ------------- animal. Monkeys are 3 ------------- . They play everywhere. The giraffe is the 4 ------------ . We all like to see these animals.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. lies - in - Hare - grass - the. الدقهلية (2023)

----

2. hungry - I'm - love - I - and - to - eat.

----

3. The - are - monkey - the hare - scared - and.

----

4. moving - is - Something - Hare's - house - inside. الغربية (2023)

----

5. the kitchen - some - There - in - are - carrots.

----

6. is - There - an - animal - house - my - in.

----

5 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:



Your favorite animal

Guiding questions

1- What is this animal ?

2- Where does this animal live ?

Lessons 4&5 ★ Writing & Project

Key vocabulary

 استمع إلى المفردات:


lizard سحلية


fish سمكة


cat قطة


bird طائر

pet	حيوان أليف
fur	فرو
claw	مخلب

space	مساحة
well-being	رفاهية / سعادة
points	نقاط

Adjectives صفات

calm	هادئ
clean	نظيف
positive	إيجابى
negative	سلبى
friendly	ودود / عطوف

independent	مستقل / يعتمد على نفسه
soft	ناعم / لين
nice	جميل
true	حقيقى
sharp	حاد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
pet	يُدلل	petted
touch	يلمس	touched

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
keep	يحتفظ بـ / يربى	kept
think	يعتقد	thought
take	يأخذ	took



Study the following

1. Cats are my favorite animals.
   - القطط هى الحيوانات المفضلة لى.
2. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch.
   - هم حيوانات جميلة بفرو ناعم تحب أن تلمسه.
3. They are clean and calm animals.
   - هم حيوانات هادئة ولطيفة.
4. They like people, but they are independent.
   - يحبون الناس ولكنهم يحبون الاستقلال.
5. You don't need to take them for a walk.
   - لا تحتاج لتأخذهم للتمشية.
6. It's true that cats have sharp claws and teeth.
   - من الحقيقى أن القطط لديها مخالب وأسنان حادة.
7. They only use them when they are scared.
   - يستخدموهم فقط (المخالب) عندما يكونوا خائفين.
8. People also say when you pet a cat, it makes you happy.
   - يقول الناس أنك عندما تدلل قطة، ذلك يجعلك سعيدًا.
9. They are good for your well-being, too.
   - هم جيدين (القطط) لرفاهيتك وسعادتك أيضًا.

Language focus قواعد لغوية

◉ نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين فكرتين أو جملتين أو كلمتين بينهما تناقض أو شىء سلبى والأخر إيجابى أو جملة مثبتة وآخرى منفية كما بالأمثلة.

1. I like most types of fruit, but I don't like mangoes.
2. My new school is great, but it's far from my house.
3. Dalia is polite and clever but she isn't friendly.

- هنا الأفكار متناقضة ولذلك استخدمنا but للتعبير عن هذا التناقض.

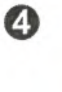
1 Look at the pets. Write the words: انظر إلى الحيوانات الأليفة. اكتب الكلمة:

bird - cat - fish - ~~lizard~~

❶  lizard

❷   ____________

❸   ____________

❹   ____________

2 Hani has to write about the best animal to keep as a pet. Read his notes. Decide which are positive (P) and which are negative (N)

هانى يكتب عن الحيوان الاليف المفضل له. اكتب بجوار كل كلمة (P) للايجابى (N) للسلبى:

Cats as pets			
calm (P)	usually friendly	have soft fur	beautiful
clean	independent	have sharp claws and teeth	petting a cat makes you happy

Cats Are the Best Pets القططأفضل الحيوانات الأليفة:

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.



3 Join these phrases to make single sentences. Use but:

اربط العبارات لعمل جمل. استخدم **but**:

1. I like most types of fruit. I don't like mangoes.

   I like most types of fruit, but I don't like mangoes.

2. We want to go to the beach. It's raining today. ____________
3. Lizards make good pets. It's difficult to find food for them. ____________
4. My new school is great. It's far from my house. ____________
5. Five-a-side football is an exciting sport. It takes a lot of time to practice it.

   ____



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Fatma has a pet_____________.

a cat b dog c lizard d bird

2. The dog has sharp _____________ .

a wings b claws c peak d hand

3. Fatma takes her dog for a walk _____________.

a every day b week c month d year

4. The dog is calm and _____________.

a bad b quiet c quite d ugly

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Cats are my best _____________ .

a fruit b vegetables c pets d plants

2. Cats use their sharp claws and teeth when they are __________ . الدقهلية (2023)

a happy b soft c scared d independent

3. Lizards are very _____________ pets, they don't make noise.

a clean b calm c noisy d scared

4. Cats have soft _____________ which is nice to touch.

a teeth b claws c paws d fur

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: كفر الشيخ (2023)

scared - shy - independent - claws - fur

Cats are my favorite animal. They are beautiful with soft ❶ _____________ which is nice to touch. They like people, but they are ❷ ___________, so they don't need to take them for a walk. They have sharp ❸ __________ and teeth, but they only use them when they are ❹ _____________. I think they are the best pets.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. to touch - The - nice - cat's - is - fur. ---------------------- القليوبية (2023)
2. beautiful - Cats - are - soft - with - fur. ----------------------------------
3. are - clean - and - They - calm. ----------------------------------
4. good - are - well-being - They - your - for. ----------------------------------
5. makes - you - a cat - you - When - it - happy - pet. ----------------------------------

5 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب ايميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

claws - pet

To your friend Hazem to tell him about cats.
Your name is Maged and your email address is maged@gmail.com and your friend's email address is hazem@yahoo.com.

New Message

To	....	Cc Bcc
From	....	
Subject	....	

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. I don t like mangoes ----------------------------------
2. which animal does Doaa like ----------------------------------

Review

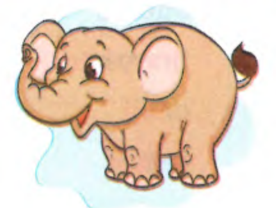
Key vocabulary



hare أرنب برى (أرنب كبير)



monkey قرد



elephant فيل



mouse فأر



mice فئران



forest غابة



grass حشائش



stomach معدة



lizard سحلية





fish سمكة



cat قطة



bird طائر

laboratory	معمل
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحى
equipment	معدات
experiments	تجارب علمية
pet	حيوان أليف

Gymnasium = Gym	صالة ألعاب رياضة
fountain	نافورة
laptop	كمبيوتر محمول
well-being	منفعة / سعادة / رفاهية

Adjectives صفات

nervous	متوتر
calm	هادئ
shy	خجول
polite	مؤدب

organized	منظم
clever	ماهر - شاطر
messy	فوضوي / غير منظم
kind	عطوف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
offer	يعرض	offered
borrow	يستلف/ يستعير	borrowed
cry	يبكى	cried
pet	يُدلل	petted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
show	يعرض/ يبين	showed
feel	يشعر	felt
take place	يحدث	took place
lie	يرقد	lay

Language focus قواعد لغوية

• Relative clauses ضمائر الوصل

1 who

- نستخدم (who) بمعنى الذى / التى للمفرد أو الذين / اللاتى للجمع لتحل محل الفاعل العاقل فى الجملة.

- Sarah is the girl who always wins the race.

2 which

- نستخدم (which) بمعنى الذى / التى لتحل محل الفاعل غير العاقل (الحيوانات / الأشياء) فى الجملة.

- This is the picture which I draw.

3 where

- نستخدم (where) بمعنى حيث لتحل محل الأماكن فى الجملة.

- This is the building where we do physical education.

الصفات المنتهية بـ «ed» والصفات المنتهية بـ «ing»

١. نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ(ed) للشيئ أو الشخص الذي لديه أو يمتلك الصفة أو ما يشعر به الشخص كما بالمثال :

- I am excited. انا متحمس!

٢. ولكن نستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) للشيئ أو الشخص المسبب للصفة أو الشيئ المسبب للشعور كما بالمثال :

- The football game is exciting. كرة القدم لعبة مثيرة. (هنا لعبة كرة القدم هي المسببة للحماس)



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to Paragraphs / Emails

Lesson 2

My school

1 My school is very big. It has a lot of buildings. I play football in the playground. I go to the IT building to use computers. I can borrow laptops. Students can go to the Gym. Students can play basketball and tennis. We use the Gym for physical education lessons. Mr Amr is a teacher who helps us in the garden. I like him very much.

Lesson 3

My favorite animal

2 My favorite animal is the monkey. I like to play with the monkeys. They are very clever. They eat nuts and bananas. I like to see them in the zoo. They are very funny. Monkeys play everywhere. They like to play with people. When the monkeys start to play, the people laugh. Monkeys want people to play with them. I'm happy to see the monkeys.

Lessons 4 & 5

3

New Message

To	hazem@gmail.com	**Cc** **Bcc**
From	maged@gmail.com	
Subject	Cats	

Dear Hazem,
How are you? I want to tell you about cats. Cats are my favorite animals. They are the best pets. I have a pet cat. Cats are calm and clean. They are independent. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They have sharp teeth and claws. They use them when they are scared. I give my cat good food. I like it very much.
Yours
Maged

Al-Azhar Test

4 I'm proud of my school. My school is very big. It has many classrooms. I use the computer in the IT building. My school has laboratories for science lessons. I play football in the playground.

Test Unit 2

Animals in the forest

5 There are a lot of animals in the forest. The lion is the king of the forest. It is the strongest animal. It eats meat. The elephant is the biggest animal. It eats leaves and grass. The giraffe is the tallest animal. It eats leaves. The monkey is the funniest animal. It eats nuts and bananas.

Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

calm - cat - do - have - fur

A : What's your favorite animal?

B : It's the 1 ....

A : Do you 2 .... one?

B : Yes, I 3 ....

A : Does your cat have soft 4 .... ?

B : Yes, it does.

A : Is your cat 5 .... and quiet?

B : Yes, it is.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	nervous	shy	messy	hare	-----
2	who	which	pet	where	-----
3	teeth	claws	fur	building	-----
4	in	of	on	calm	-----
5	shout	remember	laugh	clever	-----

3 Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. These are the shoes .... I wear to school.

   a which b where c who d when

2. Sarah is very .... She likes talking to people.

   a bad b friendly c angry d hungry

3. Mr Ahmed is the teacher .... runs the football club.

   a which b who c where d why

4. Cats are the best ....

   a pets b birds c tools d vegetables

5. The supermarket is the place .... we buy food.

ⓐ who ⓑ where ⓒ which ⓓ when

6. We play basketball in the ....

ⓐ laboratory ⓑ pool ⓒ class ⓓ gymnasium

7. The water is coming out of the ....

ⓐ pens ⓑ books ⓒ fountain ⓓ paper

8. The lion has sharp and strong ....

ⓐ fur ⓑ face ⓒ claws ⓓ tail

9. .... are my favorite animals.

ⓐ Books ⓑ Cats ⓒ Pens ⓓ Bags

10. Nada is .... She always shows respect to others.

ⓐ messy ⓑ polite ⓒ nervous ⓓ shy

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Samir and his friends went to the zoo yesterday. They saw a lot of animals. They saw the monkey and the elephant. They liked them very much. The monkey was funny. The elephant is the biggest animal. The giraffe is the tallest. We had a nice time.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Samir and his friends go?

....

2. What did Samir and his friends see?

....

3. What is the tallest animal?

....

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. The monkey is ....

ⓐ bad ⓑ funny ⓒ tall

5. The elephant is the .... animal.

ⓐ thinnest ⓑ biggest ⓒ smallest

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. and - nervous - feel - shy - I - a bit.

----

2. have - laboratories - The - equipment - all.

----

3. don't - You - take - need to - for a walk - them.

----

4. a very - is - He - boy - kind.

----

5. good - Hazem - math - at - is.

----

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A place you are proud of

big - classrooms - computer - laboratories - playground

Test on Unit 2



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Basel is in primary ....

a four b five c three d six

2. Basel's friend is called ....

a Adel b Hazem c Basim d Amr

3. Miss Hanan is the teacher of ....

a math b Arabic c English d PE

4. Miss Hanan is ....

a bad b kind c angry d happy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My friend is very .... He is good at math.

a bad b clever c angry d hungry

2. Ahmed is .... because he has a test tomorrow.

a shy b polite c nervous d organized

3. Hazem is .... He is worried about talking to people.

a messy b clever c bad d shy

4. We have the science lesson in the ....

a playground b bathroom c garden d laboratory

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

laptops - IT building - laboratory - English - education

I'm Adel. I'm very proud of my school. It has a lot of buildings. My school has a big ❶ ....where we do a lot of experiments. We have technology lessons in the ❷ .... We use ❸ .... and tablets which students can borrow. We play five-a- side football during physical ❹ .... lessons.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hany. I help new students get to know the school and their classrooms. I take them around and I stay with them at the break. I helped a new student yesterday. His name is Ali. He was very nervous and shy. I shared my book with him and I gave him extra copies of the worksheets. I love helping my friends. Next Friday, we will go to Cairo together and visit the Pyramids there.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

   a helping new students b playing football
   c studying d teachers at school

2. Ali was shy and ....

   a happy b nervous c strong d organized

3. Hany is ....

   a helpful b frightened c messy d nervous

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What did Hany share with Ali?

   ....

5. What will they visit in Cairo?

   ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. really - I'm - in - interested - Egypt - Ancient.

   ....

2. football - The - is - exciting - game.

   ....

3. do - you - Where - science - study?

   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This is my school .... (who) I learn subjects.

2. The children were so .... (excite) when they heard the good news.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

What's your favorite animal, saleh

....

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Animals in the forest

Guiding questions

1. What are these animals ?
2. What do they eat ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



I discover myself

Vacation plans

خطط الإجازة



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about making vacation plans.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن عمل خطط الأجازة.

2. Talk about facts using clauses with if or when.

- يتحدث الطالب عن حقائق باستخدام عبارات بـ if أو when .

3. Talk about when something happens using prepositions of time.

- يتحدث الطالب عن شيء ما يحدث باستخدام حروف جر الزمن.

4. Read and listen to determine the central message.

- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع ليحدد الرسالة الرئيسية (درس إخلاقى).

5. Practice saying the initial consonant sounds /w/ and /v/.

- يتدرب الطالب على نطق أصوات الحروف الساكنة /w/ and /v/ فى بداية الكلمات.

6. Write a blog post about a place you like visiting.

- يكتب الطالب منشور فى مدونة عن مكان يحب زيارته.

7. Research and make a brochure about a vacation destination.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وكتيب عن المكان المخصص للاجازة.

Lesson 1 ★ Let's go quad biking on Tuesday




استمع إلى المفردات:


visit the museum
يزور المتحف


take photos
يلتقط صور


the Manial Palace Museum
متحف قصر المنيل


go quad biking in the desert
يركب دراجات رباعية في الصحراء




ride on a rollercoaster
يركب قطار الرعب (فى الملاهى)


climb the Bab Zuweila minaret
يتسلق مئذنة باب زويلة


explore the souks
يستكشف الاسواق

Other words كلمات أخرى

vacation	أجازة	the sunset	غروب الشمس
Why don't we?	لما لا؟	outside	خارج
school project	مشروع مدرسى	top	قمة
look interesting	يبدو شيق	Like what?	مثل ماذا؟
the theme park	الملاهى		

Adjectives صفات

excited about	متحمس بخصوص	cool	رائع
interesting	شيق / رائع	great	عظيم
difficult	صعب		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
visit	يزور	visited
arrive	يصل	arrived
climb	يتسلق	climbed
explore	يستكشف	explored

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
come	يأتى	came
take	يستغرق(وقتًا) / يلتقط	took
ride	يركب	rode

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

Suggestion الإقتراح

1- Let's + inf (فعل فى المصدر) .... هيا بنا .

2- Why don't we + inf (فعل فى المصدر)....? لماذا لا نفعل ....؟

والرد: بالموافقة: - Good idea. فكرة رائعة.

والرد: بالرفض: - No, thanks. لا شكرا.

- Let's plan some activities for the trip. - Good idea.
- Why don't we try new places? - Okay, cool.

Study the following

1. I'm excited about our vacation. - أنا متحمس لاجازتنا.
2. Why don't we try new places? - لما لا نجرب أماكن جديدة؟
3. There are lots to see there. - هناك الكثير من الأشياء يمكن أن نراها هناك.
4. We can visit the Manial Palace Museum first. - يمكننا زيارة متحف قصر المنيل أولا.
5. There are some places outside Cairo that look interesting. - يوجد أماكن خارج القاهرة تبدو رائعة.

6 **We can take photos for my school project.**

- نستطيع أن نلتقط صور لمشروعى المدرسى.

7 **Let's also go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster!**

- هيا نذهب أيضًا إلى الملاهى ونركب قطار الرعب!

8 **What else can we do?**

- ماذا أيضا يمكن أن نفعل؟

9 **We can go quad biking in the desert in Giza.**

- يمكننا ركوب الدراجات الرباعية في صحراء الجيزة.

10 **If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.**

- إذا اخذنا الاتوبيس، سنصل خلال ٣٠ دقيقة تقريبًا.

11 **It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful**

- الأمر صعب لكن المنظر من الأعلى جميل.

12 **Let's climb the Bab Zuweila Minaret.**

- هيا نتسلق مئذنة باب زويلة.

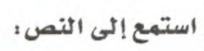
13 **We can explore the souks! They're near the Minaret.**

- نستطيع أن نستكشف الاسواق! هم بجانب المئذنة.

1 Listen and read. Which two cities do the boys mention?

استمع واقرأ. أى مدينتين ذكرها الاولاد ؟





استمع إلى النص:

Samer : I'm excited about our vacation[1] this week, Basel.

Basel : Me too! Why don't we try new places? We can travel to Cairo. There are lots to see there.

Samer : Yes. We can visit the Manial Palace Museum[2] first. If we go to the museum on Sunday, on Monday we can take photos for my school project.

Basel : Okay, cool! My mom can go with us. She loves museums. Let's also go to the theme park[3] and ride on a rollercoaster[4]!

Samer : Okay! Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places outside Cairo that look interesting.

Basel : Like what?

Arabic Meaning

١- أجازة

٢- متحف قصر المنيل

٣- الملاهى

٤- يركب قطار الرعب

Samer : We can go quad biking[5] in the desert in Giza. If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

Basel : Great! We can go early on Wednesday and come back to the hotel before evening.

٥- يركب درجات رباعية
٦- مئذنة باب زويلة
٧- تستكشف الأسواق

Basel : Yes. What else can we do?

Samer : Let's climb the Bab Zuweila Minaret[6] on Thursday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. If we are there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.

Basel : Cool! And in the morning, we can explore the souks[7]! They're near the Minaret.

Samer : Great! Cairo, here we come!



Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

- **When you see it from the air, the Nile valley is in the shape of a fan. In the north, where it opens into the delta, it is wide. In the south, where it passes between desert cliffs, it is narrow.**

يبدو وادى النيل على شكل مروحة (مروحة يد) عندما تنظر اليه من الاعلى ويبدو عريض فى الشمال حيث يتسع فى الدلتا ، ويبدو ضيق فى الجنوب حيث يمر بين منحدرات الصحراء .



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Sherif is from ....

a Luxor b Cairo c Tanta d Sohag

2. Sherif took photos at the ....

a station b park c museum d school

3. Sherif went on a .... to see the Nile.

a train b boat c bike d car

4. Sherif's vacation was ....

a boring b amazing c interesting d ugly

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I will spend my summer .... in Aswan. أسيوط (2023)

a match b vacation c wedding d birthday

2. I want to .... the souks on Monday. القليوبية (2023)

a expand b explain c explore d experience

3. Tamer will .... photos for his school project. الشرقية (2023)

a take b ride c go d climb

4. Why don't we .... new places?

a trying b tried c try d trys

5. Let's go quad .... in the Giza desert. القليوبية (2023)

a swimming b biking c playing d running

6. We can .... on a rollercoaster.

a jump b climb c ride d explore

7. I want to climb the Bab Zuweila .... one day. أسيوط (2023)

a bike b theme c minaret d lake

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الشرقية - إدارة ديرب (2023)

photos - park - rollercoaster - museum - minaret

Last week, I traveled to Cairo with my friends. We arrived in Cairo early in the morning. We visited the Egyptian ❶ .... We took a lot of ❷ .... with our cameras. We saw a lot of tourists. In the afternoon, we went to the theme ❸ .... We rode on a ❹ .... It was amazing.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. ride - on - the - Let's - rollercoaster. أسيوط (2023)

   ....

2. explore - Should - the souks - Monday - we - on? الدقهلية (2023)

   ....

3. do - What - we - else - can? الشرقية (2023)

   ....

4. vacation - excited - I'm - about - my.

   ....

5. can - go - biking - We - quad.

   ....

6. climb - minaret - Zuweila - Let's - the Bab.

   ....

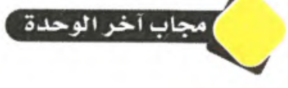
5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. how do you get to Giza ....
2. i m happy to visit the park. ....

6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:



A visit to the Bab Zuweila Minaret

Guiding phrases

the sunset - cool

....

....

....

Lesson 2 Part 1 ★ If we book the tour today, it's cheaper

Key vocabulary

 استمع إلى المفردات:

online	عبر الانترنت
company	شركة
tour guide	مرشد سياحى
helmet	خوذة
cheaper	ارخص
discount	خصم
bank details	تفاصيل الحساب البنكى
credit card	بطاقة إئتمان
tour	جولة سياحية
wallet	محفظة

the freezer	الفريزر (المجمد)
properly	بطريقة ملائمة
dictionary	قاموس
turn down	يخفض الصوت
block	يمنع / يحجب
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
bake feteer	يخبز فطير
study tips	نصائح للمذاكرة
regular routine	روتين منتظم
healthy meal	وجبة صحية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
book	يحجز	booked
switch off	يغلق جهاز	switched off
heat	يسخن	heated
turn on	يشغل	turned on
concentrate	يركز	concentrated
last	يستمر / يدوم	lasted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
find	يجد	found
pay	يدفع (مالا)	paid
say	يقول	said
sit	يجلس	sat
cost	يتكلف	cost
write down	يدون / يسجل	wrote down
hear	يسمع	heard



Study the following

1. Study for about 30 minutes but no longer.
- ذاكر لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة لا أكثر.
2. If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate.
- لو حاولت أن تذاكر لساعات بدون راحة، لا تستطيع أن تركز.
3. When you have regular breaks, you work more.
- عندما نأخذ أوقات راحة منتظمة، نعمل أكثر.
4. It's helpful if you write down what you want to do in each time in your study.
- من المفيد إذا دونت ما تريده فى كل وقت في فترة مذاكرتك.

Language focus — قواعد لغوية

The zero conditional "If" الحالة الصفرية للجمل الشرطية

١- نستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق أو الاشياء الصحيحة فى الحاضر.

٢- يتكون من:

If اذا / When عندما

If / When	comma	main clause (result) العبارة الأساسية (النتيجة)
If we go by bus	,	it is quicker.
Present simple مضارع بسيط		Present simple مضارع بسيط

If / When + present simple + present simple
جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط + جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط

- When you look at their website, the information is here.
- If / When you heat sugar, it melts.

ويمكن أن نستخدم فعل ناقص فى الجزء الثانى من الجملة:

If / When + present simple + modal verb (can)
جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط + جملة بها فعل ناقص

الافعال الناقصة مثل: must / can

- If you pass me my wallet, I can pay for the tickets now.

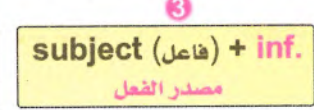
٣- قد تأتى If / When فى أول الجملة ويوضع بين الجملة الأولى والثانية فاصلة (,) (comma) أو تأتى فى وسط الجملة ولا يوضع comma:

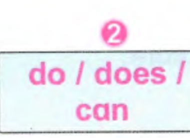
- If / When you press the button, the tablet switches off.
- The tablet switches off if you press this button.

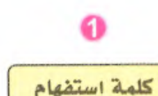
Help your child to use The zero conditional "If ". ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم حالة "if" الصفرية.

٤- وفى السؤال توضع جملة If / When فى أخر السؤال:

④ if / when + present simple?







- How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?
- Does your aunt always bake feteer when you visit her?

- لاحظ فعل «يكون» verb to be فى المضارع:

I ⟶ am	He / She / It ⟶ is
We / You / They ⟶ are	

- لاحظ فعل «يملك» verb to have فى المضارع:

She / He / It ⟶ has
I / We / You / They ⟶ have

1 Listen to Samer's conversation with his dad. How much discount do they get for the quad bike trip today?

استمع لمحادثة سمير مع والده. كم قيمة الخصم التى حصلوا عليها لرحلة الدراجات الرباعية اليوم؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:



Samer : Dad, here's the information I found online(1) about quad biking in the desert.

Dad : Oh, thanks Samer. Show me.

Samer : The company is called Desert Adventures(2). When you look at their website, the information is here. Look! The tour guide(3) will meet us at the hotel.

Dad : OK. What time will he meet us?

Samer : He'll meet us at 9 am and he'll drive us into the desert.

Dad : And what time do we get back?

Samer : We should be back around 2 pm. Lunch is included(4) in the price. Should we take some water?

Dad : Yes. Good idea. How big is the group?

Samer : It'll be a group of six.

Dad : I like the photos. Everyone is wearing helmets(5). That's good. You have to wear a helmet if you ride a quad bike. How long do we ride the quad bikes for?

Samer : One of the trips is 45 minutes, but there's also a trip for an hour. Can we do the hour tour, Dad?

Arabic Meaning

١- عبر الانترنت
٢- مغامرات الصحراء
٣- مرشد سياحى
٤- مشتمل/متضمن
٥- خوذات

Dad : Yes, of course. This is going to be a lot of fun. Remember to listen to the guide's instructions(6) so that you stay safe.

Samer : Yes, I will Dad.

Dad : Good! How do we book the tour if we can't book it on the website?

Samer : We can book it at the office in town. If we book the tour today, it's cheaper. We get a 10% discount(7).

Dad : Great. Can you pass me my wallet(8)? I need my credit card(9) to pay for the tickets. Let's go to the office now.

Samer : Sure Dad. Here you are.

٦- تعليمات
٧- خصم
٨- محفظة
٩- بطاقة إئتمان

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

اكمل الجمل بالشكل الصحيح للأفعال من بين الاقواس.

1. If you ....heat.... (heat) sugar, it ....melts.... (melt).
2. If you .... (feel) tired, you can .... (go) to bed early.
3. When the clouds .... (be) red, it .... (mean) there's dust in the sky.
4. My English always .... (get better) when I .... (study) the lessons again at home.
5. You can .... (tell) me if you .... (need) anything.

3 Put the words in order. Write the sentences in your notebook.

اكتب الكلمات الآتية فى الترتيب. اكتب الجمل فى كراستك:

1. buy / two T-shirts, / you / free / get / one / When / you
   When you buy two T-shirts, you get one free.
2. don't water / Plants / if / die / you / them
   ....
3. go / want / by bus. / Cairo, / to go to / If / you / you can
   ....
4. eat / too much cake. / stomach ache / I / if / I can get
   ....
5. we / it / my umbrella. / If / can / rains, / use
   ....
6. sees / a bee, / my cat / tries / to catch / it. / When / she
   ....



4 Use the prompts and if to complete the dialogs. Write the sentences in your notebook. Then listen and check:

استخدم العبارة مع if لتكمل المحادثة. اكتب الجمل فى كراستك ثم استمع وتأكد:

1- **Hazem** : Mom, there's a problem with the freezer. It isn't working.
Mom : The freezer / not work / you not close / the door / properly
The freezer doesn't work if you don't close the door properly.

2- **Leila** : Mrs Manal, can we use pencils in the test?
Teacher : No sorry, you can't. tell / me / now / you / not have / a black pen
....

3- **Karim** : What does this word mean, Sherif?
Sherif : I don't know. look it up / a dictionary / you / not know / a word
....

4- **Dad** : Please turn the music down, Rana. It's too loud!
Rana : But Dad, I / not can / hear / it / be / too low
....

5- **Selim** : What happens / you / block / a person / social media?
Dalia : You don't get any messages from them.
....

5 Complete the text about study tips with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

اكمل النص بنصائح دراسية بالشكل الصحيح للافعال فى القائمة:

check - concentrate - eat - finish - have - remember - try - work - write

Study for about 30 minutes but no longer. If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate. When you .... regular breaks, you .... more. It's also better to study at the same time each day, even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's brains .... better if they have a regular routine. Also, don't study when you're hungry! If you .... a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can .... better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you .... down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can .... it off the list when you .... studying and feel proud!



Lesson 2 Part 2 ★ If we book the tour today, it's cheaper

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

lunchtime	وقت الغداء	midnight	منتصف الليل
great news	اخبار رائعة	date	تاريخ اليوم
sports	رياضة	season	فصل من فصول السنة
party	حفلة	Sham El-Nessim	شم النسيم
the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر	science class	حصة العلوم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
meet	يقابل	met

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Prepositions of time
حروف جر الزمن

At - On - In

- نستخدم حرف الجر (at) بمعنى فى أو عند مع الاتى

At	at five o'clock- 4.30	مع الوقت
	at night- lunchtime- midnight	مع بعض اوقات اليوم
	at sunset - the moment- the same time	مع بعض الكلمات والتعبيرات
	at the airport	مع الاماكن الصغيرة

- نستخدم حرف الجر (on) بمعنى فى مع الاتى

On		
	on my birthday- school day	مع بعض الكلمات
	on Friday- Sunday	مع ايام الاسبوع
	on August 17th	مع التواريخ
	on the weekend	مع كلمة عطلة نهاية الاسبوع

- نستخدم حرف الجر (in) بمعنى فى مع الاتى

In		
	in 2010 – in 2015	مع السنوات
	in the morning- in the afternoon in the evening	مع اوقات اليوم
	in summer- winter- fall- spring	مع فصول السنة
	in March- in October	مع الشهور
	in Cairo- Egypt	مع الاماكن الكبيرة

1 Complete the sentences with at, in, or on:

اكمل الجمل باستخدام at , in or on:

1. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim in spring.
2. Let's meet outside the school .... 10:30 am.
3. We had a science class .... Monday.
4. They went on a trip to the Red Sea .... July.
5. Great news! I'm having a party .... my birthday!
6. What did you do .... the weekend?

2 Listen. When do the students do these things? Complete the chart:

استمع. متى يفعل التلاميذ هذه الاشياء؟ أكمل الجدول:

Tapescript نص الاستماع استمع إلى النص:

Hana : Hi. My name's Hana. I get up every day at 6 o'clock. I have breakfast with my family at 6.30 in the morning. I go to the library on Saturday and I play sports on Sunday . I do homework on Tuesday.

Youssef : Hi. I'm Youssef. I get up every day at 7 o'clock. I have breakfast with my grandparents at 7.30 in the morning. I don't go to the library but I play sports on Saturday . I do homework on Thursday.

Mayar : Hello. My name's Mayar. I get up every day at 6.30 and I have breakfast with my family at 7 o'clock. I go to the library on Sunday in the afternoon. I don't play sports . I do homework on Monday and Wednesday.

Nader : Hi. I'm Nader. I get up every day at 8 o'clock. I have breakfast with my sister at 8.15, then we go to school. I don't go to the library because I have a lot of books at home. I play sports on Wednesday. I do homework every day.

	get up	have breakfast	go to library	play sports	do homework
Hana		6:30			Sunday, Tuesday, Thursday
Youssef	7 o'clock			Saturday	
Mayar			Sunday pm		
Nader			–		every day



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. You have to wear a .... if you ride a quad bike. الشرقية (2023)

a helmet b crown c scarf d cone

2. I go on a .... with my friends to Sharm El-Sheikh. الشرقية (2023)

a ship b trip c train d camel

3. I need my credit card to .... for the ticket. الغربية (2023)

a pay b run c play d see

4. I'm very tired. I can't ....

a freeze b concentrate c see d pay

5. When you have regular .... , you remember more.

a bridges b breaks c books d brains

6. I want to eat, I'm very ....

a thirsty b hungry c angry d proud

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: أسيوط (2023)

study - healthy - breaks - eat - write

My teacher gives me some study tips. I always have regular ❶ ________________ I ❷ ________________ down a list of what I want to do each time in my study. I always have a ❸ ____________ meal at lunchtime. I can't ❹ ____________ if I am hungry.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. use - in - Can - the - we - pencils - test?

____

2. don't water - die - you - Plants - if - them. القليوبية (2023)

____

3. about - Study - minutes - 30 - for.

----

4. you - sugar, - If - heat - melts - it.

----

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. His results .... (be) usually better if he studies well. (2023) الدقهلية
2. He was born .... (at) March. (2023) القليوبية
3. .... (At) Saturdays, Ayman goes cycling. (2023) كفر الشيخ
4. When it .... (rain) , we always play indoors. (2023) كفر الشيخ
5. If you heat water, it .... (boil). (2023) الدقهلية
6. I got many presents .... (at) my birthday. (2023) الدقهلية
7. My father arrives .... (in) six o'clock every day. (2023) سوهاج
8. My friend John lives .... (at) England. (2023) أسيوط

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i play tennis at 3 o'clock

----

2. How can you get to luxor

Lesson 3 ★ Fatima faces her fear

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

fear	خوف	lake	بحيرة
incredible	مذهل / مدهش	puddle	بركة (مياه صغيرة)
secret	سر	river	نهر
calmer	أهدأ	stream	جدول مائى
dome	قبة	dear	غزال



Other words كلمات أخرى

famous places	أماكن مشهورة	famous monument	آثر مشهور
the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa	قبة أبو الهوا (جبل صخرى يقع على الضفة الغربية للنيل بأسوان)	hill	تل
		typical day	يوم نموذجى
		a teenage girl	فتاة مراهقة
great view	منظر رائع	a drink of water	شربة ماء
afraid of	خائف من	wolf	ذئب
heights	مرتفعات	clear	صافى - نقى
white	شاحب	bear	دب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
disappoint	يحبط	disappointed
lift	يرفع	lifted
sparkle	يتلألأ	sparkled
reach	يصل إلى	reached
face	يواجه	faced
breathe	يتنفس	breathed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
feel	يشعر	felt
drink	يشرب	drank
show	يظهر / يبين	showed

Study the following

1. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. - إنها أول زيارة لأمل فى أسوان.
2. She is afraid of heights. - إنها خائفة من المرتفعات.
3. Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin. - لا تريد فاطمة أن تحبط ابنة خالتها.
4. She decides to face her fear. - تقرر أن تواجه خوفها.
5. Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. - تشعر فاطمة بهدوء أكثر. لقد رفعت راسها لتنظر إلى المنظر.
6. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place. - تشعر بالفخر بأنها تعيش فى مكان رائع.
7. Little Deer runs through the forest. - يجرى الغزال الصغير فى الغابة.
8. Little Deer comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. - لقد وصل الغزال الصغير إلى بحيرة زرقاء جميلة وقرر التوقف لشرب الماء.
9. Wolf has a drink from the lake. - يشرب الذئب من البحيرة.
10. I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. - لا أستطيع أن أشرب من نفس البحيرة مثل الذئب.
11. The river is cool and clear. - النهر رائع وصافى.
12. If Little Bird can be brave, I can be brave, too! - إذا كان بإمكان الطائر الصغير أن يكون شجاعًا، فيمكنني أن أكون شجاعًا أيضًا!
13. Little Deer feels happy and proud. - يشعر الغزال الصغير بالسعادة والفخر.

1 Look at the pictures. What do you think the story is about?(✓)

انظر إلى الصور. ماذا تعتقد القصة عن؟

a. tall buildings ☐ b. a typical day for a teenage girl ☐

c. a visit to a famous monument ☐



استمع إلى النص:





Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places.

2



Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up the hill to it - there's a great view from there!"





Fatima doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Amal happy, but she has a secret: she is afraid of heights. How can she climb up the hill to the dome?

4



Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin, so she decides to face her fear. "That's a good idea," she says, "Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset."





It's Tuesday and the girls are at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."

6



Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. It is incredible. Suddenly she doesn't feel scared any more. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place!

2 Read and listen again. Answer the questions:

اقرأ واستمع مرة أخرى واجب عن الاسئلة :

1. Who comes to visit Fatima?

   Her cousin Amal.

2. Why is Fatima not sure about the visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?

   ....

3. Why do you think she decides to go?

   ....

4. When does she suggest they go to the dome?

   ....

5. Why does Amal take Fatima's hand and tell her to breathe slowly?

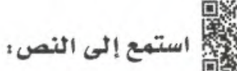
   ....

6. How does Fatima feel after she faces her fear?

   ....



Story




استمع إلى النص:

1 Listen and read the story. Where does Little Deer have a drink?

استمع واقرأ القصة. اين تناول الغزال الصغير المشروب؟

Little Deer in the Forest

Little Deer runs through(1) the forest. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf(2). Wolf has a drink from the lake.

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. Wolf wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through the forest. Next, he comes to a river. The river is cool and clear(3). But as Little Deer goes to drink from it, he sees Bear. Bear has a drink from the river.

Arabic Meaning

١- خلال
٢- ذئب
٣- صافى
٤- جدول مائى
٥- يتلألأ
٦- بركة
٧- شجاع

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same river as Bear. Bear wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a small stream(4). The stream sparkles(5) in the sun. "Finally!" he says. "I can have a... Oh no!" Little Deer sees Fox. "I can't drink

from the same stream as Fox. Fox wants to eat me!" Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a large puddle(6). It isn't blue like the lake. It isn't cool and clear like the river. And it doesn't sparkle like the stream. But Little Deer is very thirsty now!

Just then, Little Deer sees Little Bird. Little Bird sees Little Deer, too, but she isn't afraid. Little Bird has a drink from the puddle.

Little Deer watches Little Bird. "Hmm," he thinks. "If Little Bird can be brave(7), I can be brave, too!"

Little Deer goes back to the beautiful, blue lake. He sees Wolf, Bear, and Fox. But this time, Little Deer goes to the lake and has a drink. It is delicious! Little Deer feels happy and proud.

Pronunciation

1 Look and listen. Then listen again and repeat:

انظر واستمع. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وكرر:

◉ لاحظ نطق حرف /w/ حيث ينطلق مثل حرف (و) فى اللغة العربية كما فى الكلمات الآتية :

Ww /w/ words



water مياة



wolf ذئب



window شباك



wet مبلل



whale حوت



west غرب



watch ساعة يد



walk يمشى



warm دافئ



white أبيض



wear يرتدى



web شبكة العنكبوت

◉ لاحظ نطق حرف /v/ حيث نستخدم الاسنان العلوية والشفاه السفلية مع اخراج الهواء من الفم وتهتز الاحبال الصوتية عند نطق هذا الحرف:

Vv /v/ words

volcano بركان	violin اله الكمان	vegetables خضراوات
visit يزور	vase زهرية	van شاحنة
vest صديرى	veil حجاب	village قرية
	vet طبيب بيطرى	

1 Listen and circle the word you hear: استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التى تسمعها:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1- a wet b vet	2- a veil b whale	3- a vest b west

2 Listen. Complete the words with v or w: استمع واكمل الكلمات بـ V أو W :

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1- .... alk	2- .... an	3- .... eb
4- .... isit	5- .... arm	6- .... ase
7- .... ater	8- .... indow	9- .... olcano

3 Listen, read, and repeat: استمع واقرأ وردد:

1. The white wolf went for a walk with a woman wearing a watch.
2. I visited a very old village and bought a very nice violin.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hisham was afraid of ....

a dogs b cats c heights d lions

2. Hisham and Amged saw great views at the ....

a parks b Pyramids c lands d towers

3. Hisham and Amged went to the Pyramids by ....

a bike b car c taxi d bus

4. Hisham and Amged climbed the ....

a hill b mountain c bus d desert

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. She is trying to .... her fear of heights. الدقهلية (2023)

a face b want c play d reach

2. You can open the .... ,it's very hot.

a watch b window c wolf d west

3. My sister is wearing a ....

a veil b vase c violin d volcano

4. Do you like eating .... ?

a volcanoes b vegetables c villages d vans

5. Can you visit the .... of Abu Al-Hawa?

a Dome b Wall c Minaret d Door

6. Noha is very scared. Her face is............................ .

a brown b white c blue d pink

7. He is playing on the ....

a vest b veil c violin d vet

8. We should .... our fear of something.

a make b face c climb d lift

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2023)

tourists - view - photo - excited - Dome

Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It's Amal's first time in Aswan. She is very ❶ .... She wants to see all the famous places. Amal shows Fatima a ❷ .... and tells her that they can visit the ❸ .... of Abu Al-Hawa and they can also climb up the hill to it. There's a great ❹ .... from there.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: الاسكندرية (2023)

Omar and his sister Logy like going outside on their vacation. They visit many places in Cairo, Giza, Luxor and Aswan. One day Logy asked her brother to go to the Cairo Tower. At first, Omar didn't want to go there because he was **afraid** of heights. Then, he decided to face his fear and go to the Cairo Tower. On Friday they got up early and went to the Cairo Tower by bus. From the Cairo Tower, Omar and Logy could see the great view of the Cairo and the Nile.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**afraid**" means ....

   a) scared b) happy c) sad d) hungry

2. Omar and Logy saw the great view of the ....

   a) Pyramids b) Nile c) hotel d) museum

3. The general idea of the text is about a ....

   a) school b) meal c) vacation d) book

B- Answer the following questions:

4. How did they go to the Cairo Tower?

   ....

5. When did they go to the Cairo Tower?

   ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. the - forest - Deer - Little - runs - through. الشرقية (2023)

   ....

2. about - I'm - excited - my - aviation. الدقهلية (2023)

---

3. comes - to - Who - Hala - visit?

---

4. her - decides - Fatima - fear - face - to. القليوبية (2023)

---

5. feels - She - proud - to live - place - this - in.

---

6 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

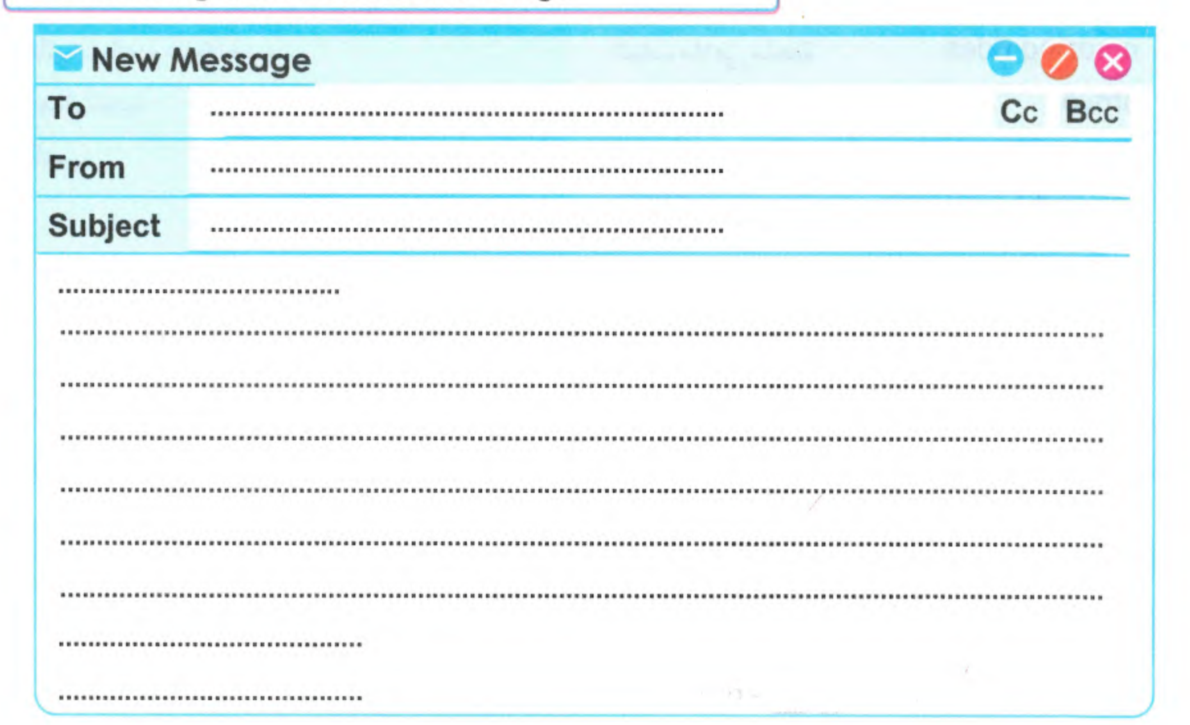
اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Little Deer in the forest مجاب آخر الوحدة

To your friend Heba to tell her about the story of Little Deer. Your name is Salwa and your email address is salwa15@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is heba26@gmail.com.

Guiding questions

1- What is this story about?
2- What did you learn from the story?



Lessons 4&5

Writing & Project

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

fun	متعة
carnival	احتفال / مهرجان
waterfalls	شلالات
blog	مدونة
theaters	مسارح
the simulation theater	مسرح المحاكاة
destination	وجهة وصول
realistic	حقيقي

Other words كلمات أخرى



exciting	مثيرة
including	تشتمل على
around	حول
special birthday	عيد ميلاد خاص
surprise	مفاجأة
world of fantasy	عالم من الخيال
amazing rides	ألعاب ملاهي مذهلة
brave	شجاع
the ocean	المحيط
per night	في الليلة

double room	غرفة لفردين
shows	عروض
stores	محلات
section	قسم
water rides	ألعاب ملاهي مائية
sound and light effects	تأثيرات الصوت والضوء
snowy mountains	جبال ثلجية
brochure	كتيب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
guess	يخمن	guessed
relax	يستريح / يسترخي	relaxed
watch	يشاهد	watched

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
feel	يشعر	felt
swim	يعوم	swam
cost	يتكلف	cost

Help your child to learn new words about places in Egypt. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم مفردات جديدة عن أماكن في مصر.

Study the following

1. I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival.
   - أنا مع عائلتى بسبب المفاجأه الخاصة لعيد ميلاد فى المهرجان.
2. When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy.
   - عندما تصل إلى الحديقة فانت فجاة تدخل فى عالم من الخيال.
3. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster and theatres where you can watch shows.
   - يوجد العاب الملاهى الرائعة لكى تجربها مثل قطار الرعب والمسارح حيث تستطيع أن تشاهد عروض.
4. In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater.
   - فى الظهيرة أردنا انا وابى الذهاب إلى مسرح المحاكاة.
5. You sit in your seat with big screens all around you, and there are sound and light effects.
   - تجلس على مقعد وحولك شاشات كبيرة ويوجد مؤثرات الصوت والضوء.
6. And it feels like you're in different places around the world, snowy mountains, even under the ocean.
   - وتشعر انك فى أماكن مختلفة حول العالم مثل جبال جليدية أو حتى تحت المحيط.
7. Sharm El-Sheikh is an amazing holiday destination.
   - شرم الشيخ وجهة رائعة لقضاء العطلات.
8. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea.
   - شرم الشيخ مدينة رائعة مزدحمة فى مصر بجوار البحر الأحمر.
9. There are lots of things to see and do. - يوجد الكثير من الأشياء يمكن أن تراها وتفعلها.

1 Read Nashwa's blog post. Answer the questions:

اقرأ تدوينة «نشوى» واجب عن الأسئلة :

1. Where is she?

   ----

2. Who is she with?

   ----

3. Why is she there?

Nashwa's blog

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE  

Tuesday June 3rd

استمع إلى النص:

All the fun of the Carnival!

Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise(1) at the Carnival! I want to tell you all about it.

When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly(2) in a world of fantasy - it's really exciting(3). There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too.

The children's section(4) has nine rides including the Orient Train(5). We have tickets for that at 10 o'clock. My brother loves water rides, so he wants to go on some of those later this morning. At eleven thirty, we have tickets for the Waterfalls ride. It has some high sections so it's a bit scary, and you get very wet! In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater(6). You sit in your seat with big screens all around you, and there are sound and light effects. It feels like you're in different places around the world, snowy mountains even under the ocean. It's very realistic(7) - I can't wait! What a great birthday present(8) - thanks Mom and Dad!

Arabic Meaning

١- مفاجأة
٢- فجأة
٣- مثير
٤- قسم
٥- القطار الشرقى
٦- مسرح المحاكاة
٧- واقعية
٨- هدية



2 Read the blog again. Put the activities in the correct order 1–3:

اقرأ التدوينة مرة أخرى. ضع الأنشطة فى الترتيب الصحيح من ١ - ٣:

a. simulation theater .... b. Orient Train 1

c. Waterfalls ride ....

Sharm El-Sheikh - an amazing holiday destination!




نص الاستماع


استمع إلى النص:

For only LE 1000 per night, per person in a double room.

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting(1) and busy(2) town in Egypt by the Red Sea(3). There are lots of things to see and do.

Arabic Meaning
١- رائعة
٢- مزدحمة
٣- البحر الأحمر
٤- يسترخى
٥- دير سانت كاترين

- swim in the sea
- relax(4) on the beach





- go quad biking in the desert



- visit St Catherine's monastery(5)



- eat good food

Take Let's Ride! bus from Giza Square every afternoon at 3 pm for LE 500 only!

Help your child to learn how to write a blog.
Help your child learn about Sharm El-Sheikh.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب تدوينه.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن مدينة شرم الشيخ.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We visited St Catherine's .... in 2021.

a tower b hill c monastery d bridge

2. I'm .... I'm not afraid of heights.

a sad b early c scary d brave

3. I have a .... to Alexandria. I travel by train. (الجيزة - منشأة القناطر (2023))

a book b ticket c pen d mobile

4. I get very .... at the water rides.

a tall b wet c dry d late

5. After a long time, we arrived our .... (القليوبية (2023))

a destination b pollution c population d information

6. The .... ride is very scary and you get wet. (القليوبية (2023))

a mountain b waterfalls c caves d desert

7. We can watch shows at the .... (المنوفية - اشمون (2023))

a station b theater c hospital d farm

8. Sharm El-Sheikh is a .... in Egypt.

a hotel b town c station d park

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

monastery - camels - tourists - biking - food

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. Many ❶_____________ like to visit it because there are a lot of things they can do there. Tourists can go quad ❷_____________ in the desert. They like visiting St Catherine's ❸_____________. They also like riding on ❹_____________ and relaxing at the beach.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. in - You - quad biking - the desert - go - can.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

2. want - the - I - to go - simulation - to - theater.

---

3. is - an amazing - Sharm - destination - El-Sheikh - holiday.

---

4. brochure - is - What - your - about?

---

5. go - Let's - the theme - park - to. (القاهرة (2023))

---

4 Write a blog of Fifty (50) words to your friend Yasser about your visit to Sharm el-Sheikh. Your name is Essam: اكتب تدوينة من ٥٠ كلمة:

interesting - the Red Sea

Essam's blog BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

Friday August 7th



5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. let s make a tourist brochure

---

2. what can you see at sharm El-Sheikh

Review

Key vocabulary



visit the museum
يزور المتحف



take photos
يلتقط صور



the Manial Palace Museum
متحف قصر المنيل



go quad biking in the desert
يركب دراجات رباعية فى الصحراء



ride on a rollercoaster
يركب قطار الرعب (فى الملاهى)



climb the Bab Zuweila minaret
يتسلق مئذنة باب زويلة



explore the souks
يستكشف الاسواق



Other words كلمات أخرى

vacation	أجازة	world of fantasy	عالم من الخيال
trip	رحلة	the ocean	المحيط
seats	مقاعد (ثابتة)	waterfalls	شلالات
carnivals	إحتفالات / مهرجانات	theaters	مسارح
activities	أنشطة	water rides	العاب ملاهى مائية
the sunset	غروب الشمس	heights	المرتفعات
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	forest	غابة

Adjectives صفات

excited	متحمس	exciting	مثيرة
interesting	شيق	cool	رائع
busy	مزدحم	realistic	واقعى / حقيقى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
die	يموت	died
book	يحجز	booked
concentrate	يركز	concentrated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
pay	يدفع (مالا)	paid
choose	يختار	chose
take	يأخذ / يستغرق	took

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The zero conditional "If" الحالة الصفرية

١- نستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق أو الاشياء الصحيحة فى الحاضر.

٢- يتكون من:

1 **If / When + Present simple + Present simple.**
جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط

- If / When you heat sugar, it melts.

ويمكن أن نستخدم فعل ناقص فى الجزء الثانى من الجملة :

2 **If / When + present simple + model verb (can)**
جملة بها فعل ناقص + جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط

الافعال الناقصة مثل: **must / can**

- If you pass me the wallet, I can pay for the tickets now.

٣- قد تأتى If / When فى أول الجملة ويوضع بين الجملة الأولى والثانية فاصلة (,) (comma) أو تأتى فى وسط الجملة ولا يوضع comma:

- If / When you need anything , you can tell me.

- You can tell me if / when you need anything.

٤- وفى السؤال توضع جملة If / When فى أخر السؤال:

كلمة استفهام + can / do / does + subject (فاعل) + inf + if / when + present simple?

- How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?

- Does your aunt always bake feteer when you visit her?

- لاحظ فعل «يكون» verb to be فى المضارع:

I → am He / She / It → is
We / You / They → are

- لاحظ فعل «يملك» verb to have فى المضارع:

She / He / It → has
I / We / You / They → have

2 Prepositions of time
حروف جر الزمن

١- نستخدم حرف الجر (at) بمعنى (فى) أو عند مع الوقت ومع كلمات:

. midnight, lunchtime / ..... o'clock

at → 3 o'clock, lunchtime, midnight /, weekend.

٢- نستخدم حرف الجر (on) بمعنى (فى) مع أيام الأسبوع والتواريخ وبعض الكلمات :

on → Sunday, birthday, March 25 / weekend / school days

٣- نستخدم حرف الجر (in) بمعنى (فى) مع الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وفترات النهار:

in → July, winter (spring - summer - fall), 2020, in the morning.

- لاحظ الآتى: مع فترات اليوم نستخدم in ما عدا at night:



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to Texts

Lesson 1

A visit to the Bab Zuweila minaret

1. Last week I went to the Bab Zuweila minaret. My brother and I climbed the minaret. We watched the sunset over the city. Then, we explored the souks near the minaret and bought amazing things. That was cool. In the evening, we went home. We had a great time on our vacation.

Lesson 3

Little Deer in the forest

2.

New Message

To heba26@gmail.com — **Cc** **Bcc**

From salwa15@yahoo.com

Subject Tiger and Little Deer

Dear Heba,

I'm happy to write to you. I'd like to tell you about the story of Little Deer in the forest. Little Deer comes to a lake and stops for a drink of water. He sees a wolf. He thinks the wolf wants to eat him. He runs away. Finally he decides to be brave. He goes back to the lake and has a drink. I enjoyed this story. See you soon.

Love,

Salwa

Lessons 4&5

Your visit to Sharm el-Sheikh

3

Essam's blog

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE  

Friday August 7th

Sharm El-Sheikh amazing town

Hi, I'm in Sharm El-Sheikh now. Yesterday we booked tickets online and went by plane. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. We will swim in the sea and relax at the beach. We can visit St Catherine's monastery. It's my favorite holiday destination. Do you think it's a nice place for vacation?



Al-Azhar Test

Rollercoasters

4

Rollercoasters are my favorite ride. I like riding them. I ride the rollercoaster with my father. My father always books tickets online. In the theme park, there are lots of rides. But if you are brave, you can ride the rollercoaster.

Activity - Unit 3

Your visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa

5

I like going to Aswan. I can visit many amazing places there. I can go with my family. We can visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa and climb up the hill to it. There's a great view from there. At first, I feel scared but I face my fear and climb the hill.

Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog:
أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

time - park - Today - Where - birthday

A : Hi, when is your birthday?

B : 1 ------------------------------------ is my birthday.

A : Happy 2 ------------------------------------.

B : Thanks.

A : 3 ------------------------------------ will you go?

B : I'll go to the 4 ------------------------------------ in Giza City.

A : Have a nice 5 ------------------------------------.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:
اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	Cairo	Giza	Alexandria	deer	-----
2	visit	forest	go	ride	-----
3	in	on	fall	at	-----
4	wolf	deer	morning	lion	-----
5	March	April	have	June	-----

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:
أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

I'm Noha. I live in Cairo. Rasha is my cousin.She comes to visit me. It is the first time in Cairo. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places. Rasha loves the Egyptian museum and the Cairo Tower.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Who is Rasha?

----

2. Where does Noha live?

----

3. Why does Rasha come to Cairo?

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. Rasha wants to see all the famous .... in Cairo. (places - schools - farms)
5. Rasha loves the Egyptian .... and the Cairo Tower. (pyramid - museum - park)

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. If we ____________ by bus, it is quicker.

a goes b went c go d going

2. Sama is afraid of heights, but she tries to face her ____________ .

a secret b face c fear d view

3. We had a science class ____________ Monday.

a at b on c in d of

4. I study better when I ____________ a healthy meal.

a eating b ate c eat d eats

5. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim ____________ spring.

a in b at c on d into

6. The film starts ____________ 10 pm.

a in b on c at d for

7. The ____________ ride is very scary, and you get wet.

a hills b mountains c waterfalls d deserts

8. How much does this pen ____________ ?

a post b cost c fast d catch

9. I go to the beach, It's a nice place to ____________ .

a damage b hurt c relax d guess

10. A ____________ is a brown animal with long horns.

a hen b lizard c dear d donkey



5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. are - the - The souks - near - minaret.

---

2. get - at - o'clock- up - I - seven.

---

3. Abu - is - the - Where - Dome - Al-Hawa - of?

---

4. puddle - Dear - a large - to - The little - comes.

---

5. first - Cairo - It's - in - Helen's - time.

---

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

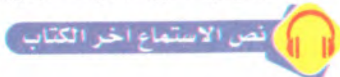
Rollercoasters

ride - father - tickets - brave - online



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. We should .... to go to good places.
   - a eat
   - b plan
   - c write
   - d visit
2. We need to choose a .... place.
   - a busy
   - b quiet
   - c crowded
   - d dirty
3. We should think how to .... to the place.
   - a leave
   - b get
   - c play
   - d see
4. We should think about the .... time.
   - a late
   - b suitable
   - c early
   - d hard

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. There are amazing .... to try like the rollercoaster. البحيرة (2023)
   - a groups
   - b rides
   - c flights
   - d tickets
2. We can ride on the rollercoaster at the .... الغربية (2023)
   - a library
   - b theme park
   - c museum
   - d minaret
3. I fell in a .... and my clothes get wet. البحيرة (2023)
   - a glass
   - b puddle
   - c minaret
   - d height
4. Noha is .... of heights, she can't climb the minaret. اسيوط (2023)
   - a excited
   - b afraid
   - c proud
   - d sure

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الجيزة - إدارة منشأة القناطر (2023)

study - healthy - breaks - eat - write

My teacher gives me some study tips. I always have regular ❶ _____________ I ❷ _____________ down a list of what I want to do each time in my study. I always have a ❸ _____________ meal at lunchtime. I can't ❹ _____________ if I am hungry.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Sara will go to Cairo with her brother Hema. They think about trying some new places. They want to visit the Manial Palace Museum on Sunday. Sara wants to visit the Cairo Tower on Monday. Hema wants to climb the Bab Zuweila minaret on Tuesday. They want to explore the Souks on Wednesday. They want to ride on a rollercoaster in a theme park in Giza on Thursday. They will return home on Friday.

A- Choose the correct answer:

1. Sara and her brother Hema will go to ....

   a Luxor   b Cairo   c Aswan   d Alexandria

2. Hema wants to .... the Bab Zuweila minaret.

   a play   b climb   c go   d help

3. Sara wants to visit the Cairo Tower on ....

   a Sunday   b Monday   c Friday   d Thursday

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What do they do on Sunday?

- -

5. When will they return home?

- -

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - very - The - exciting - rollercoaster.

- -

2. does - have - Where - a drink - Little Deer?

- -

3. from - The - was - view - the minaret - great.

- -

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I was nervous .... (at) my first school day.

2. If we go by bus, it .... (be) quicker. الشرقية (2023)

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i m having a party on Tuesday.

----

2. are you busy on friday?

----

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa

Guiding questions

1- Where's the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?

2- What can you see at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?

General Revision on Units 1, 2 & 3

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ١ - ٢ - ٣

Revision on vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات

(Unit 1)


apartment block
عمارة سكنية


chemicals
مواد كيميائية


harvest
يحصد


plant
يزرع


natural fertilizer
سماد طبيعى


roof
سطح

(Unit 2)


hare
أرنب برى (أرنب كبير)


monkey
قرد


elephant
فيل


mouse
فأر


mice فئران

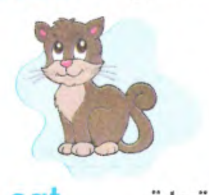

forest غابة


grass حشائش


stomach معدة


lizard سحلية


fish سمكة


cat قطة


bird طائر

(Unit 3)



visit the museum
يزور المتحف



take photos
يلتقط صور



the Manial Palace Museum
متحف قصر المنيل



go quad biking in the desert
يركب دراجات رباعية فى الصحراء



ride on a rollercoaster
يركب قطار الرعب (فى الملاهى)



climb the Bab Zuweila minaret
يتسلق مئذنة باب زويلة



explore the souks
يستكشف الاسواق

Other words كلمات أخرى



(Unit 1)

Mini forest	غابة صغيرة	pet	حيوان أليف
organization	منظمة/ مؤسسة	selfish giant	العملاق الأنانى
special	خاص	the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية
nature	الطبيعة	hang out	يقضى وقت / يتسكع
wildlife	الحياة البرية	miss	يفتقد شخص أو مكان
railway line	خط سكة حديد	well	بصحة جيدة
local residents	سكان محليون		

(Unit 2)

laboratory	معمل	Gymnasium = Gym	صالة ألعاب رياضة
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحى	fountain	نافورة
equipment	معدات	laptop	كمبيوتر محمول
experiments	تجارب علمية	well-being	منفعة / سعادة / رفاهية
pet	حيوان أليف		

(Unit 3)			
vacation	أجازة	world of fantasy	عالم من الخيال
trip	رحلة	the ocean	المحيط
seats	مقاعد (ثابتة)	waterfalls	شلالات
carnivals	إحتفالات / مهرجانات	theaters	مسارح
activities	أنشطة	water rides	العاب ملاهي مائية
the sunset	غروب الشمس	heights	المرتفعات
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	forest	غابة

Adjectives صفات

(Unit 2)			
nervous	متوتر	organized	منظم
calm	هادئ	clever	ماهر - شاطر
shy	خجول	messy	فوضوي / غير منظم
polite	مؤدب	kind	عطوف
friendly	ودود		
(Unit 3)			
excited	متحمس	exciting	مثير
interesting	شيق	cool	رائع
busy	مزدحم	realistic	واقعي / حقيقي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past ماضِ	Present	مضارع	Past ماضِ
(Unit 1)					
click	ينقر / يضغط زر	clicked	find out	يكتشف / يعرف	found out
pass	يمر	passed	become	يصبح	became
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled	drive	يقود	drove
share	يشارك	shared	build	يبني	built
			sing	يغني / يغرد	sang
			hang out	يتسكع	hung out
(Unit 2)					
offer	يعرض	offered	show	يعرض / يبين	showed
borrow	يستلف / يستعير	borrowed	feel	يشعر	felt
cry	يبكي	cried	take place	يحدث	took place
pet	يُدلل	petted	lie	يرقد	lay

(Unit 3)

die	يموت	died	pay	يدفع (مالا)	paid
book	يحجز	booked	choose	يختار	chose
explore	يستكشف	explored	take	يأخذ / يستغرق	took
concentrate	يركز	concentrated			

Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد

1 The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

◉ نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات وافعال روتينية وحقائق علمية.

	Statement جملة	Negative نفى	Question سؤال
I / We / You / They	+ inf. مصدر الفعل	+ don't / never + inf.	Do + فاعل + inf.?
He / She / It	+ inf. + (s-es-ies)	+ doesn't + inf. /never + inf. + (s-es-ies)	Does + فاعل + inf.?

Ex. He usually goes to school by bus.

Ex. I visit my cousins every week.

Ex. We don't go to school on Friday.

Ex. - He doesn't live in a city.

Ex. - Do you like pizza?

- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

Ex. Does Ahmed see his friends on weekends?

- Yes, he does. - No, he doesn't.

2 Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

Always (100%) —إلى→ **Never (0%)**

Indefinite غير محددة

always	دائما
usually	عادة
often	غالبا
sometimes	احيانا
rarely	نادرا
never	ابدا

Definite محددة

once	مرة
twice	مرتين
three times	ثلاث مرات
every day / week	كل يوم / اسبوع

◉ نستخدم ظروف التكرار للاجابة عن سؤال **How often**:

Ex. How often do you play football?

- I play football twice a week. / I sometimes play football.

3 Relative clauses ضمائر الوصل

1 who

- نستخدم (who) بمعنى الذى / التى للمفرد أو الذين / اللاتى للجمع لتحل محل الفاعل العاقل فى الجملة.

Ex. Sarah is the girl **who** always wins the race.

2 which

- نستخدم (which) بمعنى الذى / التى لتحل محل الفاعل غير العاقل (الحيوانات / الأشياء) فى الجملة.

Ex. This is the picture **which** I draw.

3 where

- نستخدم (where) بمعنى حيث لتحل محل الأماكن فى الجملة.

Ex. This is the building **where** we do physical education.

4 الصفات المنتهية بـ «ed» والصفات المنتهية بـ «ing»

١. نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) للشيئ أو الشخص الذي لديه أو يمتلك الصفة أو ما يشعر به الشخص كما بالمثال :

Ex. I am **excited**! أنا متحمس!

٢. ولكن نستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) للشيئ أو الشخص المسبب للصفة أو الشيئ المسبب للشعور كما بالمثال :

Ex. The football game is **exciting**. كرة القدم لعبة مثيرة. (هنا لعبة كرة القدم هي المسببة للحماس)

5 The zero conditional "If" الحالة الصفرية

If لو / When عندما

١- نستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق أو الاشياء الصحيحة فى الحاضر.

٢- تتكون من:

1 If / When + Present simple + Present simple.
جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط — جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط

Ex. If / When you **heat** sugar, it **melts**.

◉ ويمكن أن نستخدم فعل ناقص فى الجزء الثانى من الجملة:

2 **If / When + present simple + model verb (can)**
جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط — جملة بها فعل ناقص

الأفعال الناقصة مثل: **must / can**

Ex. If you pass me my wallet, I can pay for the tickets now.

٣- قد تأتى **If / When** فى أول الجملة ويوضع بين الجملة الأولى والثانية فاصلة (,) **(comma)**
أو تأتى فى وسط الجملة ولا يوضع **comma**:

Ex. If / When you need anything , you can tell me.

Ex. You can tell me if / when you need anything.

٤- وفى السؤال توضع جملة **If / When** فى أخر السؤال:

كلمة استفهام **+ can / do / does + subject** (فاعل) **+ inf + if / when + present simple?**

Ex. How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?

Ex. Does your aunt always bake feteer when you visit her?

6 Prepositions of time حروف جر الزمن

١- نستخدم حرف الجر **(at)** بمعنى (فى) أو (عند) مع الوقت ومع كلمات:

at ⟶ 3 o'clock / lunchtime / midnight.

Ex. I get up at seven o'clock.

٢- نستخدم حرف الجر **(on)** بمعنى (فى) مع أيام الأسبوع والتواريخ وبعض الكلمات:

on ⟶ Sunday / birthday / March 25 / weekend / school days

Ex. We travel to Aswan on Friday.

٣- نستخدم حرف الجر **(in)** بمعنى (فى) مع الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وفترات النهار:

in ⟶ July / winter (spring - summer - fall) / 2020 / in the morning.

- لاحظ الآتى: مع فترات اليوم نستخدم **in** ما عدا **at night**:

Ex. My birthday is in August.

Ex. They go to work in the morning.

General Test - Units (1 - 2 & 3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Nabil went to a new school ....

a last month b last year c last week d yesterday

2. Ahmed is good at ....

a English b Arabic c Math d Science

3. Ahmed helps his friends with the ....

a homework b play c PE d building

4. Sherif is polite and ....

a bad b shy c tall d short

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I want to climb the Bab Zuweila .... one day.

a dome b minaret c souk d museum

2. Cats are .... , so you don't need to take them for a walk. البحيرة (2023)

a busy b free c messy d independent

3. We have one .... on each hand.

a finger b knee c ankle d thumb

4. Students need laboratories to do ....

a experiments b homework c sports d projects

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: بني سويف - إدارة ببا (2023)

market - volunteers - space - grow - fruits

There's a community garden on the roof of my uncle's apartment block. The community garden is a big green ❶ .... People can ❷ .... vegetables to eat. They can also sell them in the ❸ .... We can grow all this food in the middle of the city. Some ❹ .... from the neighborhood come and help us. I sometimes help my uncle in his community garden.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our neighbor is the person who lives next door to us. Mr Walid is our new neighbor. He moved to his new house yesterday. He is kind and polite. We helped him to **organize** his house. We showed him the places where he can buy his things. He invited us to have dinner with him and his family today in his new house. His family thanked us for helping them. They are really good neighbors.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The underlined word "**organize**" means ....

   a carry b tidy c invite d move

2. The neighbor is the person who lives .... door to us.

   a behind b on c out d next

3. Mr Walid moved to a new house ....

   a last week b yesterday c last year d last month

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What did Mr Walid do when they helped him?

   ----

5. How did they help Mr Walid?

   ----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. do - farmers - rice - Where - grow?

   ----

2. ride - on - the - Let's - rollercoaster.

   ----

3. the community - Do - work - garden - you - in?

   ----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The weather is very cold .... (on) winter.

2. She never .... (eat) healthy food.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

how does Mona feel today

----

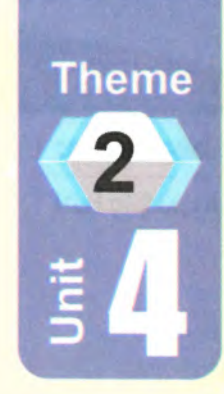
8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your study tips

Guiding phrases

concentrate - healthy meal



Myself and others

Celebrate good times!

احتفل بالأوقات السعيدة!



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, and write about celebrations.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب عن الاحتفالات.

2. Talk about things that are happening at or around the moment of speaking using the present continuous.

- يتحدث الطالب عن أشياء تحدث لحظة الكلام أو فى غضونها باستخدام زمن المضارع المستمر.

3. Understand the meaning of words and phrases in a text.

- يفهم الطالب معنى كلمات وعبارات فى نص.

4. Learn to estimate volumes.

- يتعلم الطالب عن تقدير الأحجام.

5. Understand the difference between the sounds /ei/ and /e/.

- يفهم الطالب الفرق بين الصوتين /ei/ و /e/ .

6. Write a formal email invitation.

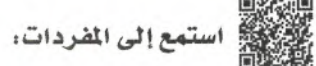
- يكتب الطالب دعوة رسمية بالبريد الإلكترونى.

7. Research and make a poster about a celebration.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وملصق عن احتفال.

Lesson 1 ⭐ Can you blow up some balloons?









balloons
بالونات



streamers
أشرطة الزينة



birthday cake
تورتة عيد ميلاد



invitation
دعوة





fireworks
ألعاب نارية



playlist قائمة تشغيل (أغانى)

Birthday celebrations phrases عبارات تستخدم فى احتفالات عيد الميلاد

hanging up the streamers تعليق أشرطة الزينة	sending the invitations إرسال الدعوات
let off the fireworks إطلاق الألعاب النارية	make a playlist عمل قائمة تشغيل (أغانى)
decorating the birthday cake تزيين تورتة عيد الميلاد	blow up some balloons ملء (نفخ) بعض البالونات بالهواء



Definitions تعريفات

invitation دعوة — You write it to ask someone to come to a party or event.

Other words كلمات أخرى

birthday party	حفل عيد ميلاد	RSVP*	من فضلك، أرسل الرد
scissors	مقص	adult	شخص بالغ / راشد
string	خيط	yard	فناء
candle	شمعة	letter	خطاب

Phrases and Prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

of course	بالتأكيد / بالطبع	everyone has to	يجب على الجميع أن
get dark	تُظلم	let me know	أخبرنى / بلغنى
tie .... together	يربط....... معًا	hang......up	يعلق
I'm not sure yet.	لست متأكداً بعد.		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
pass	يمرر	passed
tie	يربط	tied
decorate	يزين	decorated
represent	يرمز إلى	represented
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
hang up	يعلق	hung up
blow up	يملء بالهواء	blew up
send	يرسل	sent
let off	يطلق	let off



Study the following

1. **Will you pass me the scissors, please?** – هل يمكن أن تمرر لى المقص من فضلك؟
2. **I'm hanging up the streamers.** – أقوم بتعليق أشرطة الزينة.
3. **I'm tying the streamers together.** – أقوم بربط أشرطة الزينة معاً.
4. **Can you blow up some balloons?** – هل يمكنك ملء بعض البالونات بالهواء؟
5. **They're decorating the birthday cake.** – يقومون بتزيين تورتة عيد الميلاد.
6. **Are you sending the invitations?** – هل تقومين بإرسال الدعوات؟
7. **Dalida is going to make a playlist on her phone.** – ستقوم داليدا بعمل قائمة تشغيل أغانى على هاتفها.
8. **We need an adult to let off the fireworks.** – نحتاج لشخص بالغ ليطلق الألعاب النارية.

*RSVP = "répondez s'il vous plaît." (French)= "Respond, if you please." (English)



1 Listen and read. Who is the birthday party for?

استمع واقرأ. لمن حفل عيد الميلاد؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع





استمع إلى النص:

Hani : Hi Youssef, what are you doing?

Youssef : Hi, Hani. I'm hanging up the streamers(1) for my sister Nesma's, party. Can you help me?

Hani : Sure. What can I do, cousin?

Youssef : Will you pass(2) me the scissors, please? I'm tying(3) the streamers together and I need to cut the string(4). Can you also blow up some balloons?(5) We need to hang those up too.

Hani : Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are they helping?

Youssef : Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are. They're decorating the birthday cake(6) .They have candles for it, too. Oh, there's Amina. Amina! Are you sending the invitations?(7)

Amina : Hi Youssef. Yes, I am. But I'm sending everyone email invitations.(8)

Youssef : Good idea. How many people are coming?

Amina : I'm not sure yet, but I wrote "RSVP"(9) on the invitations. That means everyone has to let me know(10) if they're coming.

Hani : Who's choosing the music?

Amina : Dalida is going to make a playlist(11) on her phone. She made one for my party and it was really great.

Hani : That's right. It was really good. We can ask her to made it after she finishes the cake.

Amina : And we need an adult(12) to let off(13) the fireworks (14) in the yard(15) when it gets dark.(16)

Youssef : Yes, Nesma loves them. I know, I'll ask my dad to do it.

Arabic Meaning

١- أعلق أشرطة الزينة
٢- تمرر
٣- أربط
٤- خيط
٥- يملىء بعض البالونات بالهواء
٦- تزينان تورتة عيد الميلاد
٧- دعوات
٨- دعوات عبر البريد الإلكترونى
٩- من فضلك، أرسل الرد
١٠- يجب أن يخبرونى
١١- قائمة تشغيل
١٢- شخص بالغ/راشد
١٣- يطلق
١٤- ألعاب نارية
١٥- فناء
١٦- تظلم

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

In China, people eat noodles on their birthday. The noodles are very long to represent a long life for the person.

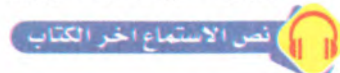
يأكل الناس المكرونة الرفيعة في الصين في عيد ميلادهم. تكون المكرونة طويلة جدا لتمثل حياة طويلة للشخص.

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك يستمع ويقرأ.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Adel is .... years old.

   a 10 b 11 c 12 d 13

2. Adel invites his .... to the party.

   a teachers b friends c cousins d doctors

3. Adel's .... makes him a big cake.

   a sister b brother c mother d father

4. Adel has twelve .... on the cake.

   a flowers b candles c pens d books

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm hanging up the .... for my sister's party. (القاهرة (2023)

   a streamers b invitations c cake d fireworks

2. I made a/an .... of the best 20 songs today. (أسيوط (2023)

   a cake b firework c playlist d invitation

3. My cousin is old enough to .... off the fireworks. (الاسكندرية (2023)

   a decorate b send c let d make

4. Are you .... the invitations? (كفر الشيخ (2023)

   a sending b blowing c hanging d decorating

5. My sister is blowing up the .... (سوهاج (2023)

   a streamers b cakes c balloons d invitations

6. The boy is decorating the birthday .... (القليوبية (2023)

   a chair b cake c candle d bike

7. I always send .... to my friends to come to my birthday party.

   a celebrations b decorations c invitations d organizations

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: المنوفية (2023)

sad - cake - blowing - happy - hanging

I'm Sara. Today is my birthday. We are very ❶ .... My brother is ❷ .... up the streamers. My sister is ❸ .... up some balloons. My mother is decorating the birthday ❹ .... My uncle is making a playlist.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: الاسكندرية (2023)

Hello, I'm Ali. Yesterday was my mother's birthday. My family gave her an exciting birthday party because she always helps and supports us. Mum does her best to make our family happy. My brother Omar, hung up the streamers with the help of my cousin Salem. My dad blew up the balloons and helped mum decorate the cake. On the other hand, my sister Lara made a playlist on her phone. She chose my mother's favorite songs. My aunt let the fireworks when it got dark. It was an **amazing** birthday party which showed our love to mum.

A- Choose the correct answer:

1. The general idea of the text is about ....

   a mum's new job
   b an exam night
   c a strange night
   d mum's birthday party

2. The underlined word "**amazing**" means ....

   a wonderful
   b bad
   c terrible
   d sad

3. Lara made a .... on her phone.

   a balloon
   b candle
   c playlist
   d fireworks

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why did the family give mum a birthday party?

   ----

5. Summarize the text in two sentences.

   ----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. blow - Can - balloons - up - you - some? القاهرة (2023)

2. forget - invite - Don't - to friends - your.

3. you - sending - Are - invitations - the?

4. together- streamers - I'm - the - tying. اسيوط (2023)

5. coming - many - people - How - are?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. what can I do, cousin

2. he is sending the invitations

7 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your birthday

Guiding phrases

invite friends - blow up balloons

Lesson 2 ★ I'm studying hard for my exams



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

Activities انشطة

cycling	ركوب الدراجات
do exercise	يؤدى تمرينات رياضية
go running	يمارس رياضة الجرى
organize a party	ينظم حفل
study for exams	يذاكر من أجل الامتحانات
documentary	فيلم / برنامج وثائقى



Other words كلمات أخرى

hard	بجد
revision	مراجعة
slow reader	قارىء بطئ
history books	كتب التاريخ
indoors	فى الداخل (داخل المبنى)
important	مهم
news	أخبار
free time	وقت الفراغ
music concert	حفل موسيقى
funny movie	فيلم مضحك
soon	قريبًا

Phrases and Prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

at the moment	في الوقت الحالي
get outside	يخرج
a few times a week	مرات قليلة كل أسبوع
on the weekends	فى عطلات نهاية الأسبوع
have fun	يستمتع بوقته
looking forward to + v-ing	يتطلع إلى
take ages	يستغرق وقت طويل

Help your child learn vocabulary about studying for the exams:

ساعد طفلك يتعلم مفردات عن المذاكرة من اجل الامتحانات.

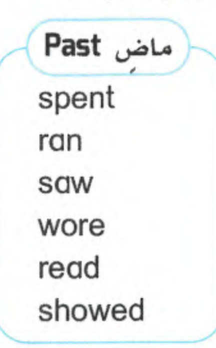
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة



Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
worry	يقلق	worried
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled
relax	يسترخي	relaxed
organize	ينظم	organized

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

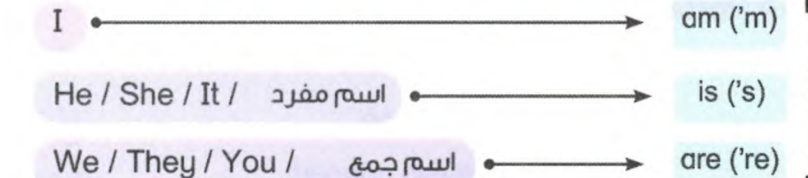


Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
spend	يقضي (وقت)	spent
run	يجري	ran
see	يرى	saw
wear	يرتدي	wore
read	يقرأ	read
show	يوضح / يبين	showed

Grammar قواعد لغوية

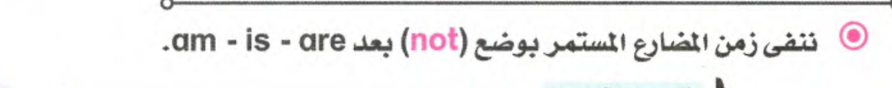
The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

1 Form التكوين



Subject		
I	am ('m)	+ v-ing.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	is ('s)	+ v-ing.
We / They / You / اسم جمع	are ('re)	+ v-ing.

Ex. She's studying for her exams this week.



◉ ننفي زمن المضارع المستمر بوضع (not) بعد am - is - are.

2 Negative النفي

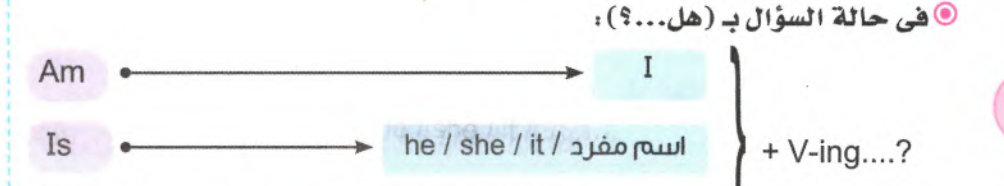
Subject		
I	am ('m not)	+ not + v-ing.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	is (isn't)	+ not + v-ing.
We / They / You / اسم جمع	are (aren't)	+ not + v-ing.

Ex. They aren't enjoying their vacation at the moment.

◉ نسأل عن زمن المضارع المستمر بالصيغة الآتية:

◉ في حالة السؤال بـ (هل...؟):

3 Question السؤال



Am	I	+ V-ing....?
Is	he / she / it / اسم مفرد	+ V-ing....?
Are	we / they / you / اسم جمع	+ V-ing....?

Ex. Are you playing football today?

◉ وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

- Yes, I am. No, I'm not.

◉ فى حالة السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

كلمة استفهام + am, is , are + فاعل + V-ing....?

Ex. What are you doing, girls?

- We're helping to make the birthday cake.

4 Usage الاستخدام

◉ يستخدم للتعبير عن احداث بدات فى الماضى وما زالت مستمرة فى الوقت الحاضر ومستمرة فى المستقبل ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام

Ex. She's studying for her exams this week.

Ex. I'm reading a book at the moment.

Ex. I'm finishing "Everything in Ancient Egypt" but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader!

◉ هنا المعنى انى اقرأ كتاب حاليا حيث بدأت قرأته منذ فترة ولم انتهى منه بعد

◉ يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل يحدث ومستمر فى لحظة الكلام.

Ex. Sara is watching TV now.

◉ يستخدم لوصف اشياء تحدث فى صورة.

Ex. What are Noha and Dalida doing there?

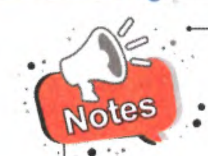
- They're playing with the balloons.

◉ يعبر عن أحداث تم التخطيط لها مسبقًا لتحدث فى المستقبل.

Ex. Many friends are coming to my birthday party tomorrow.

5 Keywords الكلمات الدالة

today	اليوم	this week	هذا الاسبوع	Look!	انظر!
now	الآن	at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة / حاليًا	Listen!	استمع!
		at present	فى الوقت الحاضر	Look out!	احترس



١- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير عند إضافة (ing) (مع بعض الأفعال):

sit → sitting hit → hitting

٢- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) غير منطوق يحذف الـ (e) ثم تضاف (ing) إلى الفعل:

use → using make → making

٣- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) منطوق لا تحذف عند إضافة (ing):

see → seeing be → being

٤- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرفي (ie) تحول إلى (y) عند إضافة (ing):

lie → lying die → dying tie → tying



Study the following

1. **I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment.**
   - أذاكر بجد من أجل امتحاناتي في الوقت الحالي.
2. **I'm not spending all my time indoors.**
   - لا أقضي كل وقتى فى الداخل (فى المنزل)!
3. **I know it is important to get outside and do some exercise.**
   - اعلم أنه من المهم الخروج وممارسة التمارين الرياضية.
4. **I'm going running every morning in the park.**
   - أنا اذهب للجرى كل صباح في المتنزه.
5. **I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad.**
   - أقوم أيضًا بركوب الدراجة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع مع والدي.
6. **I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week.**
   - أحاول رؤية أصدقائي مرات قليلة في الأسبوع.
7. **My friend Asser is organizing a party at his house.**
   - ينظم صديقي آسر حفلة في منزله.
8. **What are you reading?**
   - ماذا تقرأ؟
9. **What's the weather like in Alexandria?**
   - ما هى حالة الطقس فى الاسكندرية؟

Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. What are you .... today, Hazem?

a do   b did   c doing   d does

2. Amr is .... a book in the library.

a read   b reading   c reads   d to read

3. I .... going to the party. I have a lot of homework.

a isn't   b 'm not   c aren't   d don't

4. My sister .... wearing a red dress.

a am   b is   c are   d do

5. They aren't .... football at the moment.

a play   b played   c plays   d playing

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس :

1. My brother is .... (go) to the work now.

2. We are .... (have) our lunch now.

3. What .... (are) she doing at the moment?

4. Are you playing chess? Yes, I .... (are).

5. She is .... (studies) for the exam this week.

3 Listen and read Ali's email to his friend Eyad. Do the boys live in the same city?

استمع واقرأ إيميل على لصديقه إياد. هل يعيش الأولاد فى نفس المدينة؟

New Message

To	**ali@qwikmail.com**	**Cc Bcc**
From	**eyad@egyptmail.com**	
Subject	**What's your news?**	


استمع إلى النص:

Hi Eyad,

How are things?

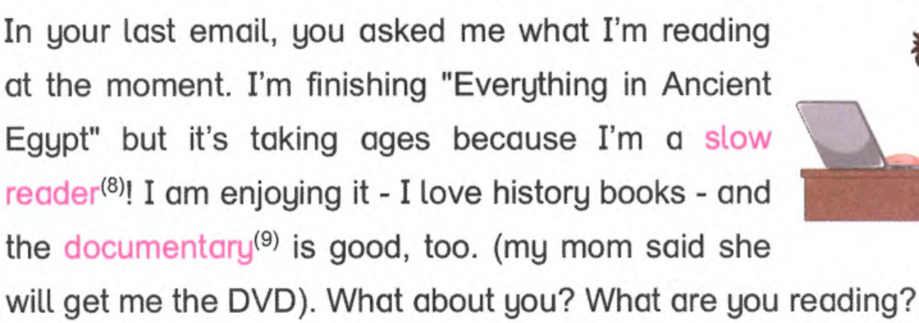
I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry(1); I'm not spending all my time indoors(2)! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise, so I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling(3) on the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week, too - it's good to relax(4) and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about how our revision(5) is going! My friend Asser is organizing(6) a party at his house for the end of the exams, so we are all looking forward to that(7).

Arabic Meaning

١- لا تقلق
٢- فى الداخل
٣- اركب دراجة
٤- استرخى
٥- مراجعة
٦- ينظم
٧- نتطلع إلى ذلك
٨- قارئ بطئ
٩- فيلم / برنامج وثائقى

What's the weather like in Alexandria? It's really hot here already!





In your last email, you asked me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing "Everything in Ancient Egypt" but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader(8)! I am enjoying it - I love history books - and the documentary(9) is good, too. (my mom said she will get me the DVD). What about you? What are you reading?

Write soon and tell me your news,

Ali

4 Complete the sentences with the present continuous form of the verb:

اكمل الجمل بصيغة زمن المضارع المستمر:

1. Malak is finishing her project on Egyptian celebrations this week. (finish)
2. The students ________ hard for a music concert. (practice)
3. Where ________ your brother ________ in the USA? (study)
4. We ________ our lunch at the moment. (eat)
5. ________ Basel and Amir ________ a funny movie? (watch)
6. I ________ in the basketball match today, I have too much school work. (not play)

5 Put the words in order. Write the sentences in your notebook:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب. اكتب الجمل فى كراستك:

1. playing? - Are - a - they - game

   Are they playing a game?

2. wearing - a - hat. - I'm - new

   ____

3. some - Ahmed - isn't - cake. - eating

   ____

4. sisters - My - cooking - food. - some - are

   ____

5. your - taking - dad - Is - photos?

   ____

6. helping - Laila and Mona - your - are - mom.

   ____



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. You look very tired, you need to .... and have fun.

a work b eat c relax d run

2. My brother is a slow .... He takes four months to finish reading a book.

a reader b rider c moment d revision

3. **A:** My sister passed the exam! **B:** Great ....

a foods b news c pens d books

4. My room is very messy. I want to .... it.

a eat b cycle c organize d write

5. I like history, so I always watch .... films. القليوبية (2023)

a cartoon b sports c funny d documentary

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I had a wonderful time in Alexandria with my family. We went **there** by train. My family liked to travel to Alexandria. My best thing in Alexandria is swimming in the sea early in the morning. My family liked to swim in the sea. We met my father's friend Mr. Mustafa and his family. We played together on the beach. I built a huge sandcastle. The trip was amazing.

A- Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "**there**" refers to ....

a Alexandria b Cairo c London d Aswan

2. The family liked to swim in the ....

a river b sea c lake d canal

3. The trip was ....

a sad b boring c amazing d bad

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

B- Answer the following questions:

4. How did they travel to Alexandria?

---

5. What is their best thing in Alexandria?

---

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. reading - What - you - are? أسيوط (2023)

---

2. sisters - My - cooking - food - some - are.

---

3. wearing - a hat - I'm - new. المنوفية (2023)

---

4. the - was - What - weather - like - there? كفر الشيخ (2023)

---

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She is studying for her exam .... (last) week. القليوبية (2023)
2. Are you .... (played) football at the moment?
3. Look! The cat is .... (run) after the mouse. القاهرة (2023)
4. They .... (is) coming from school now. أسيوط (2023)
5. .... (Does) she helping her mother? الاسكندرية (2023)
6. I'm .... (read) a story at the moment. الجيزة (2023)
7. Hatem .... (is studying) now, he's sleeping.

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

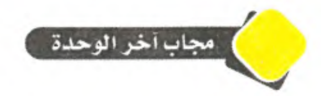
1. what's the weather like

----

2. I m not spending all my free time in reading

----

6 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:



cycling - go running

To your friend Amir telling him about what activities you are doing these days. Your name is Tarek and your email address is tarek55@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is amir33@gmail.com.

New Message

To	....	Cc Bcc
From	....	
Subject	....	

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

- Birthdays around the world
- Math
- Pronunciation





استمع إلى المفردات:

blow out	يطفىء (الشمع)
breath	النفس
burn	يحترق
noodles	مكرونة رفيعة وطويلة (شعرية)
tradition	تقليد
guest	ضيف
adult	راشد / بالغ
celebration	احتفال

Other words كلمات أخرى

age	عمر / سن
snack	وجبة خفيفة
piece	قطعة
birthday card	كارت عيد ميلاد
especially	خصوصاً
(be) born	يولد
everywhere	في كل مكان
peach	خوخة
Chinese	الصينيون
usual	معتاد
party food	طعام الحفل
present	هدية
flame	لهب
basbousa	بسبوسة

Countries الدول

India	الهند
Brazil	البرازيل
Nigeria	نيجيريا
the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
Britain	بريطانيا
South Africa	جنوب إفريقيا
China	الصين
Holland	هولندا



Phrases and Prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم
come out	يخرج
get a present	يحصل على هدية
give a present	يعطي هدية
fully grown	كامل النضج
blow out the candles	يطفيء الشمع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
include	يشمل	included
invite	يدعو	invited

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
leave	يترك / يغادر	left
become	يصبح	became
burn	يحترق	burnt
blow out	يُطفيء	blew out

Definitions تعريفات

blow out	يطفيء	to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame
adults	البالغون	fully grown people, not children
breath	النفس	the air that comes out of mouth
noodles	مكرونة رفيعة وطويلة (شعرية)	a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs.
guests	ضيوف	people you invite to your home



Study the following

1. Birthdays are celebrated all over the world.

- يتم الاحتفال بأعياد الميلاد فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

2. We usually make a birthday cake. - عادة ما نعد تورتة عيد الميلاد.

3. We put candles on the cake to show the children's age.

- نضع الشموع على التورتة لنبين اعمار الاطفال.

4. The candles show the person's age. - تبين الشموع عمر الشخص.

5. The children usually get a present. - عادة ما يحصل الاطفال على هدية.

6. Children everywhere like party food. - يحب الأطفال فى كل مكان طعام الحفل.

7. Children like to blow out the candles. - يحب الأطفال أن يطفئوا الشموع.

8. The birthday child gives cake to all the guests.

- يعطى الطفل صاحب عيد الميلاد تورتة لكل الضيوف.

9. It's good to do this with one breath. - من الجيد أن تفعل ذلك فى نفس واحد.

10. They become one on the day they are born.

- يصبحوا عندهم سنة فى اليوم الذى يولدون فيه.

11. My mom always makes basbousa. - دائما ما تعد امى البسبوسة.

Tip!

- To match headings to paragraphs in a text, look for key words first. What is the topic of the key words in each paragraph? Then look at the headings. Are there any words that are the same or are about the same topics?

- لمطابقة العناوين بالفقرات فى النص، ابحث عن الكلمات الرئيسية أولاً. ما هو موضوع الكلمات الرئيسية فى كل فقرة؟ ثم انظر إلى العناوين. هل هناك كلمات متطابقة أو تتحدث عن نفس الموضوعات؟

1 Listen and read the text. Which birthday or party food would you like to eat the most? Discuss with a partner:

استمع واقرأ النص. أى طعام أعياد الميلاد أو الحفلات تحب أكثر؟ ناقش مع زميلك:

Tapescript  نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص: 

1- Our birthday celebrations(1)

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present(2), too

2- Birthdays are not just for children

What about in other countries? In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even when they are adults(3). People often give other people birthday cards too, especially on important birthdays. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age.



In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15 or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10 and 15.

Arabic Meaning

١- احتفال
٢- هدية
٣- بالغون
٤ - وجبة خفيفة
٥- يطفئ
٦- النفس
٧- تحترق
٨- ضيوف
٩- مكرونة رفيعة

3- Candles and cakes

Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches and snacks(4). In many countries, children like to blow out(5) the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath(6)! But in India, the candles are left to burn(7). Did you know that when it is a child's birthday in Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family? That's their mom and dad! In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the guests(8) at their party first, before they have some themselves.

4- A longer life

Some countries have different birthday food. In China, people like to eat long noodles(9) or peaches on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you a long life. And Chinese people are often older. Why? Because they become one on the day they are born. So if you are 10, a Chinese child is 11!



CLIL: MATH

Estimating volume تقدير الحجم

Key vocabulary

milkshake	مخفوق الحليب
in total	إجمالي / في المجمل
full	ممتلىء
estimate (d)	يقدر
estimation	تقدير
guess (ed)	يخمن
amount	مقدار / كمية
exact	دقيق / مضبوط
fridge	ثلاجة
half a liter	نصف لتر
milliliter	ملليلتر
measuring tube	أنبوب قياس

- عندما نقوم بعملية تقدير الكمية (حجم / طول / عرض....) فأننا، نعطى أرقامًا ليس بالضرورة أن تساوى الكمية بشكل محدد. فمثلاً عند تقدير طول شخص بأنه حوالى متر ونصف (150سم) من الممكن أن يكون 140سم أو 160سم ومن الممكن اتباع خطوات تقريب العدد كما درسنا فى الوحدة الثانية.
- حيث إذا كان الرقم المطلوب تقديره يساوى أو يزيد عن 5 / 50 / 500 فنقوم بزيادة الكمية المطلوب تقديرها: 260 ملليلتر ≃ 300 ملليلتر بالتقريب.
- اما إذا كان الرقم اقل من أو يساوى 4 / 49 / 499 لا نزيد الرقم ويبقى الرقم الصغير كما هو.
- فمثلاً لو سأل شخص عن كمية من السائل تبلغ 220 ملليلتر ما هو اقرب تقدير لها فيمكن أن نقول 200 ملليلتر.

Tip!

- When we talk about the amount of something, we don't always need to be exact. We can estimate, or guess, the amount. For example, if your mom asks you, "How much milk is there in the fridge?" You can say, "There's about half a liter" not, "There's 487 milliliters." We often use the word about when giving an estimation.

عندما نتحدث عن مقدار شيء ما ، فإننا لا نحتاج دائمًا أن نذكر ذلك بدقة. يمكننا تقدير أو تخمين المقدار. على سبيل المثال، لو تسألك والدتك، «ما مقدار الحليب الموجود في ثلاجة؟» يمكنك أن تقول: «هناك حوالي نصف لتر» وليس، «هناك ٤٨٧ مليلتر». غالبًا ما نستخدم كلمة «حوالى» عند إعطاء تقدير.

Look at the measuring tubes. Estimate how much water is in each one? How much water is there in total?

انظر إلى أنابيب القياس. قم بتقدير كمية الماء فى كل منها. كم إجمالى كمية المياه؟

1. 220 ml
2. .... ml
3. .... ml
4. .... ml
5. .... ml
6. There's about ...... ml of water in total.

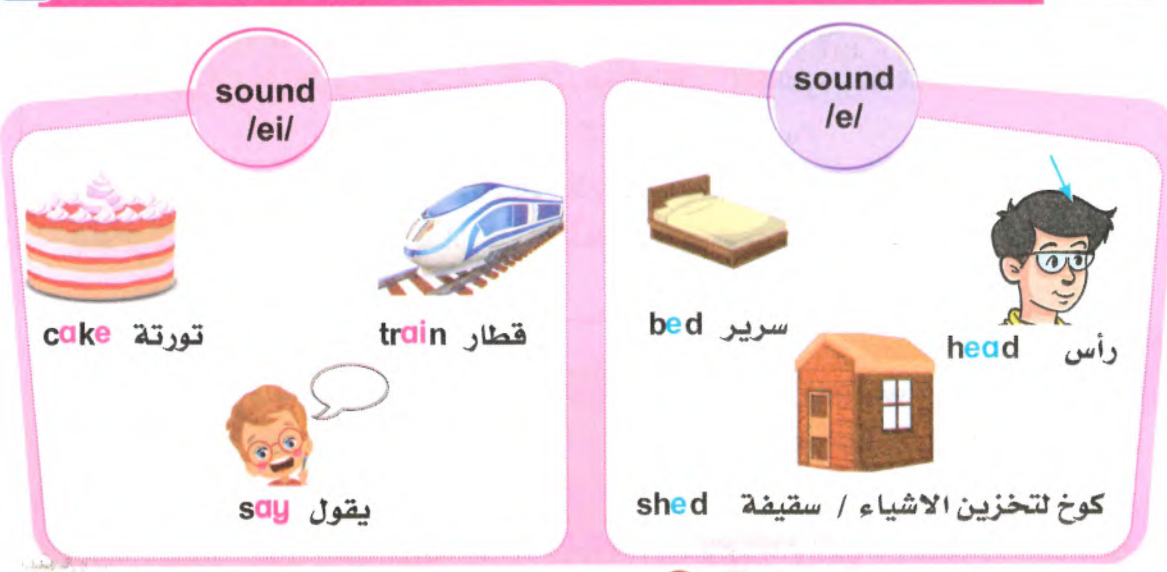
Pronunciation

The sounds /ei/ & /e/

◉ ندرس في هذا الدرس نطق الرمز الصوتى /ei/ وتمثله الحروف a-e / ay / ai.

◉ وندرس ايضًا نطق الرمز الصوتى /e/ وتمثله الحروف e / ea / ai فى الكلمات الآتية :

1 Look, listen, and repeat: انظر واستمع وردد :



Other words كلمات أخرى

The sound /ei/	
bake	يخبز
pay	يدفع (مالًا)
stay	يبقى / يقيم

The sound /e/	
said	يقول
bread	خبز
get	يحصل على

wait	ينتظر	ledge	حافة
main	رئيسى	men	رجال
shade	ظل	sell	يبيع
sail	يبحر - شراع	met	قابل
mate	رفيق	pen	قلم جاف
pain	ألم	desk	مقعد
plate	طبق مسطح	let	يدع / يترك
rainbow	قوس قزح		



Study the following

1. I think the tools are in the shed. - أعتقد أن الأدوات موجودة في السقيفة.
2. I want to sail a boat! - أريد أن أبحر بقارب!
3. Gameela said that she's excited about her holiday. - قالت جميلة أنها متحمسة لاجازتها.
4. Hani has a pain in his foot. - يعاني هاني من ألم في قدمه.

2 Read the words and write them in the correct group:

اقرأ الكلمات واكتبهم فى المجموعات الصحيحة :

~~bake~~ - bread - get - ledge - pay - said - stay - wait

/ei/	/e/
bake	

3 Listen and circle the word that you hear: استمع وضع دائرة على الكلمة التى تسمعها :

1. Is this the (main) / men paragraph in the text?
2. I think the tools are in the shed / shade.
3. I want to sail / sell a boat!
4. Gameela say / said that she's excited about her holiday.
5. Hani has a pain / pen in his foot.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hossam's friend's .... was last week.
   a birthday   b cake   c birth place   d bird
2. Hossam's friend had a big ....
   a park   b party   c balloon   d book
3. Hossam's friend blew out the candles with one ....
   a breeze   b breath   c bread   d park
4. Hossam's friend .... all his friends to the party.
   a played   b traveled   c invited   d wrote

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: المنوفية - إدارة تلا (2023)

football - cards - friends - candles - birthday

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt, We usually make ❶ ____________ cakes for our children and put ❷ ____________ on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and ❸ ____________. The children usually get presents too. People often give other people birthday ❹ ____________ too, especially on important birthdays.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... are people you invite to your home. الدقهلية (2023)
   a Adults   b Guests   c Children   d Chinese
2. .... is the air that comes out of your mouth. القليوبية (2023)
   a View   b Sound   c Tradition   d Breath
3. There are enough chairs for all the.............................. at the party. القاهرة (2023)
   a guests   b meals   c traditions   d presents
4. My brother is nine, so we put nine .... on the top of his birthday cake. كفر الشيخ (2023)
   a balloons   b streamers   c candles   d invitations

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

5. We blow............................... candles on birthdays.

a over b out c into d about

6. In India, the candles are left to............................... .

a bear b learn c burn d turn

7. Children usually get .... on their birthdays.

a traditions b presents c trains d peaches

8. Children everywhere like party ....

a food b breath c coat d boat

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. all - Birthdays - over - the world - are - celebrated. القليوبية (2023)

----

2. Chinese - eat - like - noodles - The - to. سوهاج (2023)

----

3. has - foot - a pain - Hani - in - his.

----

4. mom - always - My - basbousa - makes.

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. in China, people eat noodles -----------------------

2. How do you celebrate your birthday, ali -----------------------

6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Birthday parties

Guiding questions

1- When is the birthday?

2- Do you like giving presents?



Writing & Project

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

celebration	احتفال
Mother's Day	عيد الأم
address	عنوان
drinks	مشروبات
Sincerely	بصدق / بإخلاص
formal language	لغة رسمية
polite	مهذب
correct	صحيح
spelling	الهجاء
costume	ملابس / زى



Definitions تعريفات

celebration	احتفال	party
attend	يحضر	come to
confirm	يؤكد	say yes or no

Other words كلمات أخرى



event	حدث
details	تفاصيل
below	أسفل
local	محلى
prize	جائزة
sports hall	قاعة لممارسة الرياضة
community	مجتمع صغير
grammar	قواعد لغوية

Phrases and Prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

(be) addressed to	مرسل إلى
as well as	بالإضافة إلى
bye for now	إلى اللقاء الآن
in writing	كتابيًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
receive	يستلم	received
attend	يحضر	attended
reply	يرد	replied
confirm	يؤكد	confirmed
dress up	يتهندم	dressed up
figure out	يستنتج	figured out

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
speak	يتحدث	spoke
write	يكتب	wrote
know	يعرف	knew
let	يترك / يدع	let

Study the following

1. **I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year.**
   - أكتب إليكم لأدعوكم إلى احتفال المدرسة بعيد الأم هذا العام.
2. **We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21.**
   - ننظم يومًا خاصًا للحدث يوم الأحد ٢١ مارس.
3. **We are inviting people from the local community who often help our school.**
   - ندعو الناس من المجتمع المحلي الذين غالبًا ما يساعدوا مدرستنا.
4. **We very much hope you can attend.**
   - نأمل بشدة أن تتمكن من الحضور.
5. **RSVP in writing to the email address above.**
   - من فضلك رد سريعا و كتابيًا على عنوان البريد الإلكتروني أعلاه.
6. **Please reply by February 20 to confirm if you can attend the celebration.**
   - يرجى الرد قبل ٢٠ فبراير لتأكيد ما إذا كان بإمكانك حضور الاحتفال.
7. **Dress up as your favorite character from your favorite book.**
   - ارتدي ملابس شخصيتك المفضلة من كتابك المفضل.
8. **Figure out which character your friends are from the clothes they are wearing.**
   - اكتشف شخصية أصدقائك من الملابس التي يرتدونها.
9. **We have an amazing prize for the best costume.**
   - لدينا جائزة رائعة لأفضل زي.
10. **Come and try our drinks and delicious snacks!**
    - تعال وجرب مشروباتنا ووجباتنا الخفيفة اللذيذة!
11. **Who is the invitation addressed to?**
    - لمن توجه هذه الدعوة؟

Tip!

- We use formal language when we speak or write to people we don't know very well. We use polite language and correct spelling and grammar in formal writing.

نستخدم اللغة الرسمية عندما نتحدث أو نكتب لأشخاص لا نعرفهم جيدًا. نستخدم لغة مهذبة وهجاء صحيح وقواعد سليمة فى الكتابات الرسمية.

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص: 

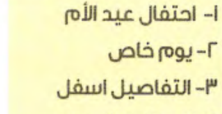
New Message

From	**celebrationgroup@newschool.com**
To	**Mr Ahmed Hegazy**
Subject	**Mother's Day Celebration**

Cc Bcc

Dear Mr Ahmed,

I am writing to invite you to our school's **Mother's Day celebration**(1) this year. We are organizing a special day(2) for the event on Sunday March 21 (details below(3)). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community(4) who often help our school. We very much hope you can **attend**(5).



Arabic Meaning

١- احتفال عيد الأم
٢- يوم خاص
٣- التفاصيل اسفل
٤- المجتمع المحلى
٥- يحضر
٦- ارسل الرد
٧- يؤكد

Date : Sunday March 21

Time : 4:00 pm – 7:00 pm

Location : School Hall

RSVP in writing to the email address above



Please reply(6) by February 20 to confirm(7) if you can attend the celebration.

Yours sincerely,

Randa Gamal



1 Look at the words in bold. Match them to the more informal expressions:

انظر إلى الكلمات بالأسود العريض وصلهم بالتعبيرات غير الرسمية :

1. **Sincerely,**	a. say yes or no
2. **celebration**	b. party
3. **attend**	c. come to
4. **confirm**	d. Hi!
5. **Dear**	e. Bye for now

2 Read and do:

اقرأ وافعل:

A poster for a celebration خطوات عمل ملصق للاحتفال

1. Read your poster. Look carefully at the title, text, and pictures.
2. Give your celebration a name and write a title.
3. Write a description of the event and the things people can do.
4. Add a photo/some photos.
5. Include information about the place, date, and time.
6. Check your writing: are the spelling, grammar, and punctuation correct?

Book Day Party!

Let's celebrate reading!

Dress up(1) as your favorite character(2) from your favorite book.

Figure out(3) which character your friends are from the clothes they are wearing.

We have an amazing prize for the best costume(4).

Come and try our drinks and delicious snacks!(5)

Thursday, 2 pm, in the school hall(6). Family members(7) are all welcome!

Arabic Meaning

١- ارتدى ملابس
٢- شخصيتك المفضلة
٣- اكتشف /استنتج
٤- زى
٥- وجبات خفيفة لذيذة
٦- قاعة
٧- افراد



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We are wearing .... in the party. القليوبية (2023)

a costume b celebration c fireworks d invitation

2. Please, call me to .... if you want to come to the party.

a forget b confirm c sleep d sail

3. We have an amazing .... for the best costume.

a prize b spelling c hall d address

4. Tomorrow is our school's Mother's Day ....

a estimation b celebration c information d location

5. I hope all the guests can.............................. the party.

a miss b attend c invite d play

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الفيوم - إدارة طامية(2023)

presents - address - special - celebration - local

Yesterday was my mother's birthday. It was a great 1 ______________. I invited my friends. We organized a 2 ______________ day for the event. We also invited people from the 3 ______________ community. They helped us in the party. My mother got a lot of 4 ______________.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. a - prize - the best - We - costume - have - for. الدقهلية (2023)

____

2. addressed - is - invitation - the - Who - to?

____

3. are - the - inviting - local community - We - from - people.

____

4. attend - We - very much - hope - you - can

____

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. we have an amazing prize

- -

2. what does randa do

- -

5 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

big party - invite

To your friend Hana inviting her to your birthday party. Your name is Hala and your email address is hala@gmail.com and your friend's email address is hana@yahoo.com.

New Message

To	....	Cc Bcc
From	....	
Subject	....	

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Birthday celebration احتفال عيد ميلاد



balloons
بالونات



streamers
أشرطة الزينة



birthday cake
تورتة عيد ميلاد



invitation
دعوة



playlist قائمة تشغيل (أغانى)



fireworks
ألعاب نارية

cycling	ركوب الدراجات
do exercise	يؤدى تمرينات رياضية
go running	يمارس رياضة الجرى
celebration	احتفال
traditions	تقاليد
organize a party	ينظم حفل
study for exams	يذاكر من أجل الامتحانات
blow out	يطفىء (الشمع)
breath	النفس
burn (burnt)	يحترق
formal language	لغة رسمية
polite	مهذب

correct	صحيح
spelling	الهجاء
costume	ملابس / زى
estimate (d)	يقدر
guess (ed)	يخمن
present	هدية
guest	ضيف
adult	راشد / بالغ
Mother's Day	عيد الأم
reply	رد
drinks	مشروبات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
decorate	يزين	decorated
organize	ينظم	organized
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
invite	يدعو	invited
attend	يحضر	attended
confirm	يؤكد	confirmed
dress up	يتهندم	dressed up

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
hang up	يعلق	hung up
blow up	يملىء بالهواء	blew up
sing	يغنى	sang
know	يعرف	knew
let	يترك / يدع	let
leave	يترك / يغادر	left

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

فاعل	إثبات	نفى	استفهام
I	am + v-ing	am not + v-ing	Am + فاعل + v-ing?
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	is + v-ing	is not + v-ing	Is + فاعل + v-ing?
We / You / They / اسم جمع	are + v-ing	are not + v-ing	Are + فاعل + v-ing?

+ (كلمة إستفهام) قبل صيغة الاستفهام

Keywords كلمات دالة Look! - Listen! - now - at the moment - at present

Usage استخدام
١- يستخدم لوصف صورة.
٢- يعبر عن فعل يحدث الآن.

Ex.
1. Sama and Shrouk are cooking lunch now.
2. Rahma is not taking photos at the moment.
3. What are Youssef and Omar doing?
4. Is Osman reading a book now? - Yes, he is. / No, he isn't.



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to Texts

Lesson 1

My birthday

1 Yesterday was my birthday. I'm twelve years old. I had a party and I invited my friends, Ziad and Shady. They came to my house early to help me. They brought nice presents for me. They blew up balloons. We had a lot of fun. I like my friends.

Lesson 2

Activities I'm doing these days

2

New Message

To	amir33@gmail.com.	Cc Bcc
From	tarek55@yahoo.com	
Subject	Activities I'm doing these days	

Dear Amir,

How are you and your family? It's holiday. I have free time. So I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on the weekends. I sometimes go to the cinema with my family. It's good to relax and have fun.

Write soon and tell me your news.

Yours,

Tarek

Lesson 3

Birthday parties

3 Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The guests come and bring presents with them. We decorate cakes and play the playlists to sing and dance together.

Lessons 4&5

Invitation to my birthday party

4

New Message

To	hana@yahoo.com	Cc Bcc
From	hala@gmail.com	
Subject	Invitation to my birthday party	

Dear Hana,

I'm so happy to write to you. How are you? My birthday is next Friday. I'm having a big party. I'd like to invite you to come. All our friends will be there. We will do many things. We will decorate the cake and blow up the balloons. Waiting for your reply.

Yours,

Hala

Al-Azhar Test

My free time

5

I don't have much free time. I spend it in a useful way. I like reading history books. I also like doing exercise. I sometimes draw and color nice pictures.

Activity Unit 4

Getting ready for the exams

6

I'm taking my exams next week. I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. I always have regular breaks to feel relax. I don't worry. I just study hard. I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise. It's good to have fun sometimes. I talk to my friends. We talk about our revision.

Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

invited - birthday - up - doing - invitations

A : What are you (1) --?

B : I'm blowing (2) ---------------------------------- some balloons.

A : Why?

B : Because my (3) ------------------------------------ is today.

A : Have you (4) -------------------------------- all of your friends?

B : Yes, I have sent the (5) ----------------------------------.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	balloon	present	birthday	forget	-----
2	cake	bread	cookies	wait	-----
3	pen	pencil	pain	paper	-----
4	train	car	bake	taxi	-----
5	noodles	peaches	apples	candles	-----

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

I'm Ola. On my last birthday, mom made a wonderful birthday cake. It was very delicious. All my friends liked it. It had a lot of chocolate and fruit. My friends said it was the best in the celebration. I asked my mom to make me another one.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Who made a wonderful cake?

----

2. What's the celebration about?

----

3. Who attended the celebrations?

B. Choose the correct answer:

1. Everyone .... the cake. **(liked - disliked - threw)**
2. Ola asked her mother to .... another cake. **(eat - make - buy)**

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm _____________ up the streamers.
   a hanging b blowing c cutting d feeding
2. We have a party today. We invited many _____________ .
   a guests b presents c candles d snacks
3. The birthday boy blew out the candles with one _____________ .
   a path b breath c break d park
4. My friend is _____________ a party at his house at the moment.
   a organize b organizing c organizes d organized
5. My brother likes history, so he always watches _____________ films.
   a cartoon b funny c documentary d sports
6. I need an adult to let off the _____________ for my birthday party.
   a balloons b cans c fireworks d streamers
7. He plays football with his friends in the school _____________ .
   a class b lab c yard d room
8. I'm _____________ forward to the party to see my cousin.
   a seeing b looking c making d eating
9. "A _____________" is the air that comes out of your mouth.
   a Breath b Tradition c Sound d Present
10. My friends are wearing _____________ for the party.
    a streamers b costumes c rooms d halls

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. I'm - studying - my - hard - exams - for.

----

2. birthday - got - present - I - a.

----

3. the - you - Are - invitations - sending?

----

4. gets - piece of - first - Who - the - the cake?

----

5. often - People - cards - give - birthday.

----

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your free time

useful - history - exercise - draw - color

Test on Unit 4



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. In China, people eat .... on their birthday.

   a apples b noodles c pasta d rice

2. The noodles are very ....

   a short b long c tall d big

3. The noodles represent a .... life for the person.

   a small b long c sad d dirty

4. The noodles are a .... there.

   a tradition b book c pen d cake

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm .... up the balloons.

   a sending b tying c decorating d blowing

2. We .... my birthday in the club yesterday.

   a celebrated b invited c produced d included

3. I'm ....a big party tomorrow.

   a making b taking c having d doing

4. We will .... the cake, will you help us?

   a decorate b hang c let off d tie

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: المنوفية - إدارة السادات (2023)

cake - blowing - making - happy - hanging

I'm Sara. Today is my birthday. We are very 1 __________ .My brother is 2 __________ up the streamers. My sister is 3 _________ up some balloons. My mother is decorating the birthday cake. My uncle is 4 __________ a playlist.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my sister's birthday. We are all happy and busy, too. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister's party. My brother is blowing up some balloons. They're bright and colorful. My mom made a nice cake for my sister. Dalia and Noha are decorating the birthday cake. We have 10 candles for the cake to show my sister's age. My father sent the invitations to our friends. We are all very **excited**!

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm hanging up the ....

a balloons   b invitations   c streamers   d cakes

2. The underlined word "**excited**" means very ....

a bored   b sad   c angry   d happy

3. My sister is .... years old.

a nine   b ten   c seven   d fifteen

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is my brother doing?

....

5. Who sent the invitations?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. birthday - decorating - the - They're - cake.

....

2. you - up - Can - balloons - some - blow?

....

3. attended - I - last - a - big - week - party.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I'm .... (read) a story at the moment.

2. .... (Is) you watching the match now?

7 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

what're you doing this week

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Getting ready for the exams

Guiding phrases

study - hard - make - revision



Myself and others

Amazing journeys

رحلات مدهشة



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about famous travelers in the past.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب ويبحث عن مشاهير الرحالة في الماضي.

2. Talk about things that happened in the past using common irregular verbs.

- يتحدث الطالب عن الأشياء التي حدثت في الماضي باستخدام الأفعال الشاذة الشائعة.

3. Understand the difference between the sounds /ʤ/ and /ʒ/.

- يفهم الطالب الفرق بين الأصوات /ʤ/ و /ʒ/

4. Listen to understand specific details in a text.

- يستمع الطالب ليفهم تفاصيل محددة في النص.

5. Write a diary entry to express feelings and mood.

- يكتب الطالب يوميات للتعبير عن المشاعر والمزاج.

6. Research and make a poster about a famous traveler.

- يبحث الطالب ويقوم بعمل ملصق عن رحالة مشهور.

Lesson 1 ★ He went by ship

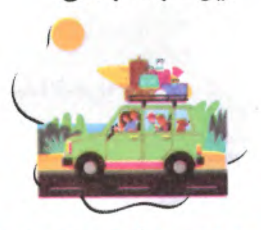
Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


ride a camel
يركب الجمل


travel by train
يسافر بالقطار


sail by ship
يبحر بالسفينة


go on a journey
يذهب في رحلة طويلة


traveling expressions
تعبيرات السفر


take a trip
يقوم برحلة قصيرة


go on a voyage
يذهب في رحلة بحرية

diary	مفكرة يومية / مذكرة	voyage	رحلة بحرية
trip	رحلة قصيرة	travels	رحلات

Famous explorers مستكشفون مشهورون

Ibn Battuta (1304–1368)	ابن بطوطة	Vasco da Gama (1460–1524)	فاسكو دا جاما
Marco Polo (1254–1324)	ماركو بولو		

Help your child learn about traveling expressions. ساعد طفلك يتعلم عن تعبيرات السفر.

Famous places أماكن مشهورة

China	الصين	Iran	إيران
Croatia	كرواتيا	Korcula	جزيرة كورتشولا (فى كرواتيا)
Hormuz	مدينة هرمز	Venice	مدينة فينيسيا الايطالية

Other words كلمات أخرى



adventure	مغامرة	far away	بعيد
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	Italian	إيطالى (الجنسية)
different	مختلف	museum	متحف
difficult	صعب	travel diary	مذكرات السفر
experiences	تجارب حياتية	vacation	إجازة
explorer	مستكشف	poem	قصيدة شعرية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
imagine	يتخيل	imagined
sail	يبحر	sailed
stop	يتوقف	stopped
travel	يسافر	traveled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
fly	يطير	flew
ride	يركب	rode
read	يقرأ	read
think	يعتقد	thought

Study the following

1. **What was your favorite thing about the vacation?** ماذا كان أفضل شئ فى الأجازة؟
2. **The museum is on an island called Korcula.** يقع المتحف في جزيرة تسمى كورتشولا.
3. **The museum is all about the travels of Marco Polo.** المتحف مخصص فقط لرحلات ماركو بولو.
4. **Marco Polo was an Italian explorer.** كان ماركو بولو مستكشفًا إيطاليًا.
5. **He is one of the first people from the West to visit China.** إنه من أوائل الناس الذين زاروا الصين من الغرب.
6. **Marco Polo went to China in the 13th century.** ذهب ماركو بولو إلى الصين في القرن الثالث عشر.

7 Marco Polo wrote a diary about his experiences. كتب ماركو بولو يوميات عن تجاربه.

8 How did people get to China in those days? كيف وصل الناس إلى الصين في تلك الأيام؟

9 Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. ذهب ماركو بولو في رحلة بحرية طويلة.

10 The museum had a lot of things from ancient China.

كان المتحف يحتوي على الكثير من الأشياء من الصين القديمة.

11 I went to Dahab with my grandparents. We went for a week.

ذهبت إلى دهب مع أجدادي. ذهبنا لمدة أسبوع.

12 I went to Hurghada with my family. We went by bus.

ذهبت إلى الغردقة مع عائلتي. ذهبنا بالأتوبيس.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

journey, trip, and voyage

- رحلة طويلة (journey)
- رحلة قصيرة (trip)
- رحلة بحرية (voyage)

- He goes on a long journey to India.
- They went on a day trip to the beach.
- The ship made a voyage across the Red Sea.

1 Do you know these famous explorers from the past? Where did they go? Why are they all famous? Discuss

هل تعرف هؤلاء المستكشفين المشهورين من الماضي؟ أين ذهبوا؟ لماذا كلهم مشهورين؟ ناقش.

❶ 
Ibn Battuta
1304–1368

❷ 
Vasco da Gama
1460–1524

❸ 
Marco Polo
1254–1324

2 Listen and read. Where did Injy go on vacation? What was her favorite thing during the trip?

استمع واقرا. أين ذهبت إنجي في الإجازة؟ ما كان أفضل شيء بالنسبة لها أثناء الرحلة؟



استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript نص الاستماع



Rana : What are you reading, Injy?

Injy : Oh hi, Rana. It's my travel diary. I want to remember[1] my family's vacation[2] in Croatia[3] a few years ago.

Rana : That's a good idea. What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

Injy : I think it was visiting the Marco Polo Museum.

Rana : Really? Where is that?

Injy : It's on an island in Croatia called Korcula[4]. We took a trip there. It's a really interesting museum-all about the travels of Marco Polo.

Rana : Who was Marco Polo?

Injy : He was an Italian explorer[5] and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th century[6] and wrote a diary[7] about his experiences[8]. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo.*

Rana : How did people get to China in those days? It's very far away. You couldn't just fly there, or travel by train!

Injy : It was very difficult[9] – the journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage[10] by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China!

Rana : Wow, what an adventure[11]!

Injy : Yes, and imagine arriving in China almost 800 years ago! It was so different then. The museum had a lot of things from ancient China. It really made the story of Marco Polo come to life.

Arabic Meaning

١- يتذكر
٢- إجازة
٣- كرواتيا
٤- جزيرة كورتشولا
٥- مستكشف
٦- القرن الثالث عشر
٧- مذكرة
٨- تجارب حياتية
٩- صعب
١٠- رحلة بحرية
١١- مغامرة

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

The longest journey on foot was George Meegan's walk from Tierra Del Fuego in Argentina to Alaska. It was 30,608 km long and he completed it in 2,425 days between 1977 and 1983.

تعد أطول رحلة سيرا على الأقدام كانت رحلة جورج ميجان من تييرا ديل فويجو في الأرجنتين إلى الاسكا. كان طول الطريق 30,608 كم وأكمل رحلته في 2425 يومًا بين عامي 1977 و1983



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Salem .... a trip every year. الاسكندرية (2023)

a takes b rides c sails d writes

2. Marco Polo is a famous Italian .... أسيوط (2023)

a doctor b painter c singer d explorer

3. Tourists like to .... camels across the desert. المنوفية (2023)

a drive b cycle c ride d fly

4. **A:** .... was Marco Polo? **B:** He was an Italian explorer. الغربية (2023)

a When b Who c How d Where

5. Lina went on a long voyage by the .... الدقهلية (2023)

a sea b hotel c desert d zoo

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

years - diary - China - century - Travels

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer. He was one of the first people from the west to visit ❶ ______________. He went there in the 13th ❷ ______________ and wrote a ❸ ____________ about his exprience. It's called the ❹ ____________ of Marco Polo.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص التالى واجب عن الأسئلة: الدقهلية (2023)

Ibn Battuta is one of the greatest explorers in history. He lived during the 14th century. He was born in 1304. Ibn Battuta wanted to explore cultures. He started his journey at the age of 21, and <u>it</u> lasted for 29 years. He visited many places like Egypt, India, China, and many more. He didn't travel by plane like we do today. He used camels, boats, and walked long distances. Ibn Battuta wrote about his journey. His writings helped us understand and respect the differences between different places in the world. We also learned to be brave and curious to reach our dreams,

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ibn Battuta started his journey when he was ....

a 21 b 29 c 75 d 14

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

2. In his journey, Ibn Battuta used ....

a cars b trains c planes d camels

3. The underlined word "**it**" refers to ....

a Ibn Battuta b the journey c the camel d Egypt

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why did Ibn Battuta want to explore the world?

----

5. What do we learn from Ibn Battuta's journeys?

----

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. an - explorer - Italian - Marco Polo - was. (المنوفية 2023)

----

2. wrote - his - Marco Polo - about - a diary - experiences. (الاسكندرية 2023)

----

3. your - trip - How - Omar - was? (الاسكندرية 2023)

----

4. my - went - with - I - grandparents - to Dahab.

----

5. get to - How - China - did - in those days - people?

----

6. your - about - What - favorite thing - the vacation - was?

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

the museum had a lot of things

Lesson 2 Part 1 ★ A surprising discovery

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

advanced	متقدم
clay	صلصال
mystery	لغز
archaeologist	عالم آثار
inspiration	إلهام
tools	أدوات
sculpture	تمثال منحوت
complicated	متشابك/ معقد

Other words كلمات أخرى



works of art	أعمال فنية
civilization	حضارة
humans	البشر
BCE	قبل الميلاد
CE	بعد الميلاد
Ife people	شعب الأيفي (في نيجيريا قديمًا)
farming tools	أدوات زراعية
incredible	لا يصدق / مدهش
information	معلومات
quality	جودة
sitting position	وضعية الجلوس
large eyes	عيون كبيرة
unusual objects	أشياء غير مألوفة
village of Nok	قرية نوك في نيجيريا
ability	قدرة
written	مكتوب
iron	حديد
hair style	قصة شعر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
agree	يوافق	agreed
call after	يسمي باسم	called after

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
find	يجد	found
write	يكتب	wrote

Definitions تعريفات

clay	صلصال	a type of earth that is sticky when wet
inspiration	إلهام	an example others use to help create new ideas
tools	أدوات	objects we use to make or do things
sculptures	منحوتات	art made from stone or wood
advanced	متقدم	modern or well developed
archaeologist	عالم آثار	a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground
mystery	لغز	something that people do not understand or cannot explain

Study the following

1. **Almost 100 years ago, local people found some unusual objects under the ground.**
   منذ ما يقرب من ١٠٠ عام وجد السكان المحليون بعض الأشياء الغير مألوفة تحت الأرض.
2. **These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans.**
   كانت هذه الأشياء عبارة عن تماثيل جميلة من الصلصال لبشر.
3. **The sculptures were all in the same style.**
   كانت جميع المنحوتات منحوتة بنفس الطريقة.
4. **The sculptures had large eyes and complicated hair styles.**
   كانت عيون المنحوتات كبيرة وكان لها قصات شعر متشابكة.
5. **They were in a sitting position with their hands on their legs.**
   كانت المنحوتات في وضع الجلوس وأيديهم على أرجلهم.
6. **The quality of the work was incredible.**
   كانت جودة العمل مدهشة.
7. **Archaeologists went to the area to find out more.**
   ذهب علماء الآثار إلى المنطقة لمعرفة المزيد.
8. **There were iron and stone farming tools.**
   كانت هناك أدوات زراعية من الحديد والحجارة.
9. **The Ife were famous for making beautiful metal sculptures of human heads.**
   اشتهر شعب الأيفي بصنع تماثيل معدنية جميلة لرؤوس بشرية.
10. **There is no written information about the Nok people.**
    لا توجد معلومات مكتوبة عن شعب نوك.
11. **We can learn about the Nok people from their art.**
    يمكننا التعرف على شعب نوك من أعمالهم الفنية.
12. **Their culture is still a mystery today.**
    لا تزال ثقافتهم لغزا حتى اليوم.

1 Listen and read. Which two cultures are mentioned?

استمع واقرأ. أى الثقافتين تم ذكرهم؟



Tapescript نص الاستماع


استمع إلى النص:

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok[1] in Nigeria, a country in West Africa[2], found some unusual objects[3] under the ground. These objects[4] were beautiful **clay sculptures**[5] of humans[6]. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes[7] and complicated hair[8] styles. They were usually in a sitting position[9] with their hands on their legs. The quality[10] of the work was incredible[11].

A team of **archaeologists**[12] went to the area to find out more. They found many similar sculptures in an area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming tools[13]. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very **advanced** culture from around 500 BCE. to 200 CE. It was a civilization which had the ability to work iron and stone to make tools, and which made beautiful art.

They called this culture the "Nok" civilization[14], after the village where sculptures were found. Some believe that the sculptures were the **inspiration**[15] for the famous works of art by the later Ife people[16], who were in Nigeria from the 11th to the 15th century CE. The Ife were famous for making beautiful metal sculptures of human heads. However, there is no written information[17] about the Nok people, so we can only learn about them from their art[18]. Their culture is still **a mystery**[19] today.

Arabic Meaning

١. قرية نوك
٢. غرب إفريقيا
٣. أشياء غير مألوفة
٤. أشياء
٥. منحوتات من الصلصال
٦. بشر
٧. عيون كبيرة
٨. شعر متشابك
٩. وضع الجلوس
١٠. جودة
١١. لا يصدق/مدهش
١٢. علماء الآثار
١٣. أدوات زراعية
١٤. حضارة
١٥. إلهام
١٦. شعب الأيفي
١٧. معلومات
١٨. عمل فني
١٩. لغز



Lesson 2 Part 2 ★ A surprising discovery

Language focus قواعد لغوية

The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

1 Usage الاستخدام

◉ يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت وانتهت في الماضي.

- My uncle visited us.

2 Form التكوين

subject (فاعل) + **verb** (فعل في التصريف الثاني) + باقي الجملة

- My friend bought a new phone.

◉ تنقسم الأفعال في التصريف الثاني الى أفعال منتظمة وغير منتظمة.

أولا : الأفعال المنتظمة وهي التي تنتهي بـ d, ed ,ied :

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف e نضيف اليه d فقط :

- like → liked dance → danced

- إذا لم ينتهى الفعل بحرف e نضيف اليه ed :

- cook → cooked play → played

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y يسبقه حرف ساكن نقوم بحذف حرف الـ y ونضيف ied :

- study → studied carry → carried

ثانيا : الأفعال الغير منتظمة وهذه الأفعال لا يضاف اليها ed وتحفظ كما هي:

- go → went eat → ate

subject فاعل + **didn't** + **inf** مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة

subject + **never** + التصريف الثاني للفعل + باقي الجملة

- We didn't go to the park.
- Osama didn't play tennis.
- He never ate sushi.

4 Question السؤال

?باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل + inf + فاعل subject + Did + (كلمة استفهام)

- Did you change your phone?

◉ وتكون الإجابة اما بـ Yes في حالة الإثبات أو بـ No في حالة النفي:

- Yes, I did. / - No, I didn't.

5 Keywords الكلمات الدالة

- When did you travel to London? - I traveled two years ago.

- yesterday / last (week / month / year) / ago / in the past / in + year (in 2010)

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

◉ **Verb to be in the past** فعل يكون فى الماضى

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was
We/ You / They / اسم جمع	were

- In the past, there were no cars.
- Ashraf was born in 1989.

◉ لا نستخدم did أو didn't في حالة النفي أو الاستفهام مع الفعل يكون verb to be في زمن الماضي البسيط:

- Shady and Martin didn't be at school yesterday. (x)
- Shady and Martin weren't at school yesterday. (√)
- Did Adam be with his father? (x)
- Was Adam with his father? (√)

1 Circle the correct words to complete the text:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة لإكمال النص:

The area where the Nok people lived ❶ was / were in Nigeria. People ❷ found / find sculptures in this area, and archaeologists ❸ go / went there to study them. The Nok culture was advanced, and its people ❹ make / made sculptures from clay, and tools from stone and iron. Their sculptures were usually of humans. These ❺ was / were beautifully made and ❻ had / has unusual eyes and hair styles. There is no written information about the Nok culture, so we don't know much about the people even now.

2 Complete the sentences with the past simple form of the verb in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بصيغة الماضي البسيط للفعل بين القوسين:

1. Fares ....was.......... angry with his brother yesterday. (be)
2. We .... a great time at the carnival! (have)
3. Jana and Gameela .... pizza for us last night. (make)
4. My family .... on vacation last year. (go)
5. Nader and Walid .... in my class last year. (be)
6. The archaeologists .... many old tools. (find)

3 Write sentences using the prompts. Use the past simple of verbs:

كون جمل مستخدمًا الكلمات. قم بصياغة الأفعال في الماضي البسيط:

1. she / go / to the library / last week

- -

2. he / be / very happy

- -

3. they / make / a cake

- -

4. he / have / a lot of homework

- -

4 Circle the correct answer:

ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hany didn't (go) / went on the palace tour with the guide.
2. Did your mom made / make your dress, Leila? Yes, she did / didn't.
3. We didn't have / had a good meal in that restaurant.
4. The water in the sea weren't / wasn't warm.
5. Where did you find / found your books? They was / were in my bag.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... means modern or well developed. (المنوفية (2023)
   a Advanced b Clay c Fascinating d Shy
2. A .... is a group of camels and people traveling together.
   a car b bus c plane d caravan
3. My uncle is a/an .... He studies very old objects. (القاهرة (2023)
   a chef b mechanic c vet d archaeologist
4. In fields, farmers use iron .... for farming.
   a pens b books c tools d balls
5. .... is a type of earth that is sticky when wet. (الدقهلية (2023)
   a Metal b Clay c Paper d Wood
6. .... are art made from stone or wood.
   a Pens b Sculptures c Mystery d Countries
7. We should be proud of our country's ....
   a mystery b civilization c tools d games

2 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص التالى واجب عن الأسئلة: (الاسكندرية (2023)

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in west Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style. They had large eyes and complicated hair styles. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work was **incredible**. A team of archaeologists went to the area to find out more. They called this culture the "Nok" civilization, but it is still a mystery today.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nok is a small .... in Nigeria.
   a town b city c village d hotel
2. Archaeologists are persons who study ....
   a old things b modern things c geography d math
3. The sculptures were made of ....
   a wood b clay c stone d sand

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Where did the local people find the unusual objects?

- -

5. How were the sculptures they found?

- -

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. your - trip - How - , Kareem - was?

- -

2. were - style - the same - all - in - The sculptures.

- -

3. a mystery - culture - Their - still - today - is.

- -

4. went to - find out - the area - Archaeologists - to - more.

- -

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My family .... (go) on vacation last year. الدقهلية (2023)
2. We .... (don't) visit Aswan last summer. القاهرة (2023)
3. The children .... (don't) do their homework yesterday. كفر الشيخ (2023)
4. Did you .... (played) well? الاسكندرية (2023)
5. Did your mom .... (had) a new dress? القليوبية (2023)
6. Ahmed and Omar .... (was) in the park yesterday. الفيوم (2023)
7. I went to the zoo but I .... (don't) see the lion. الغربية (2023)
8. She .... (finds) the keys under the chair yesterday.
9. .... (Is) he happy in Aswan last year? أسوان (2023)

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

my family went on a vacation

- -

Lesson 3 Part 1

Marco Polo crosses the desert



استمع إلى المفردات:



caravan	قافلة
fascinated	منبهر
sand dunes	كثبان رملية
wander	يتجول
wasteland	الأرض القاحلة / البور
legend	قصة خرافية / اسطورة

Adjectives & Adverbs صفات وأحوال

Adjective صفة

dangerous	خطير
empty	فارغ
lost	تائه
frightening	مخيف
mysterious	غامض

Adverb حال

silently	بصمت
slowly	ببطء

Other words كلمات أخرى

adventure	مغامرة
Gobi Desert	صحراء جوبي
horizon	الأفق
Lop Nur	صحراء لوب نور (فى الصين)
dromedaries	الجِمَال (وحيدة السنام)
Noah Oasis	واحة نوح
waves	أمواج

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
move	يتحرك	moved
roll	يلف / يتدحرج	rolled
last	يدوم	lasted
sway	يتأرجح	swayed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
freeze	يتجمد	froze
can	يستطيع	could
lose	يضل / يتوه	lost

* يوجد نوعان من الجمال : الجِمال وحيدة السنام وهى الموجودة في المنطقة العربية والجِمال ثنائية السنام فى أوروبا وباقى الدول.

Definitions تعريفات

fascinated by	منبهر بـ	very interested in
caravan	قافلة	a group of camels and people traveling together
swaying	متأرجح	moving from side to side
wasteland	أرض قاحلة / بور	a landscape where nothing lives
wandered	تجول	walked about without a direction
legend	قصة خرافية	a very old and famous story



Study the following

1. **Marco Polo was twenty-one when he went into the Gobi Desert.**
   كان ماركو بولو في الحادية والعشرين من عمره عندما ذهب إلى صحراء جوبي.
2. **He was fascinated by the sand dunes.** كان مفتونًا بالكثبان الرملية.
3. **Sand dunes moved with each step the camels made.**
   تحركت الكثبان الرملية مع كل خطوة اتخذتها الجمال.
4. **The wind made them move and roll like huge waves.**
   جعلتهم الرياح يتحركون ويتدحرجون مثل الأمواج الهائلة.
5. **Local people called the Gobi Desert the dry sea.**
   أطلق السكان المحليون على صحراء جوبي "البحر الجاف".
6. **It was a mysterious and dangerous place.** كان مكانًا غامضًا وخطيرًا.
7. **By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold.**
   في النهار، كان الجو شديد الحرارة، وفي الليل، كان البرد قارسًا.
8. **There were many strange legends about this desert.**
   كان هناك العديد من الأساطير الغريبة عن هذه الصحراء.

1 Listen and read. What did the desert look like to Marco Polo? Why?

استمع كيف كانت تبدو الصحراء لماركو بولو، لماذا؟



Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert(1) for the first time. He was **fascinated**(2) by the sand dunes(3) which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes(4) were always changing. The wind made them move and roll(5) like huge yellow waves(6). In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language.

The dromedaries(7) in the **caravan**(8) moved slowly up and down the dunes, **swaying**(9) like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur(10), the last village before the empty **wasteland**(11) of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers – no people, no plants, no water.

It was a mysterious(12) and dangerous(13) place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold – sometimes there was snow. They went on silently(14), but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange **legends**(15) about this desert. People said that travelers(16) who were lost long ago in the desert **wandered**(17) there still …

Before they left Lop Nur, Marco made sure they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last(18) for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening(19), empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis(20) on the horizon(21). They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted(22), but their desert adventure(23) was over. They were in China!

Arabic Meaning

١- صحراء جوبي
٢- منبهر
٣- كثبان رملية
٤- اشكال
٥- يتدحرج
٦- أمواج
٧- جمال احادية السنم
٨- قافلة
٩- متأرجح
١٠- صحراء لوب نور
١١- الأرض القاحلة
١٢- غامض
١٣- خطير
١٤- بصمت
١٥- أساطير
١٦- مسافرون
١٧- تجولوا
١٨- يدوم
١٩- مخيف
٢٠- واحة نوح
٢١- الأفق
٢٢- منهك
٢٣- مغامرة

لاحظ

الصفات والاحوال فى النص وتعلم اهمية استخدامهم حيث تساعد القارئ على تخيل ما يحدث وتساعد القارئ ايضا فى فهم كيف تشعر الشخصيات.

Lesson 3 Part 2 ★ The Mysterious Land ★ Pronunciation



Key vocabulary

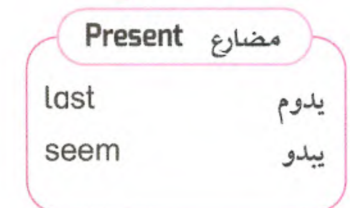


استمع إلى المفردات:

light of a candle	ضوء شمعة	island	جزيرة
comes up	تشرق (الشمس)	port	ميناء
palm trees	أشجار النخيل	telescope	تلسكوب
perhaps	ربما	the captain	القائد
exhausted	مرهق	small cabin	حجرة صغيرة
terrible	فظيع / سئ	writer	كاتب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة



Present مضارع		Past ماض
last	يدوم	lasted
seem	يبدو	seemed

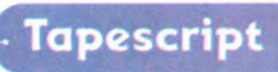


Study the following

1. **Today was a long boring day with terrible weather.**
   كان اليوم يومًا طويلًا مملًا مع طقس سئ.
2. **My journey to the mysterious island wasn't possible.**
   لم تكن رحلتي إلى الجزيرة الغامضة ممكنة.
3. **I can see the island through my telescope.**
   أستطيع أن أرى الجزيرة من خلال التلسكوب الخاص بي.
4. **The beaches are white and sandy with many palm trees.**
   الشواطئ بيضاء ورملية وبها العديد من أشجار النخيل.
5. **There are green mountains at its center.**
   هناك جبال خضراء في وسطها.
6. **I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night.**
   لقد نمت هادئًا في حجرتي الليلة الماضية.
7. **I had breakfast with the others on the ship.**
   تناولت الإفطار مع الآخرين على متن السفينة.

1 Listen and read to the page from an 18th century writer's diary. Where was he when wrote it?

استمع واقرأ صفحة من يوميات كاتب من القرن الثامن عشر. أين كان عندما كتبه؟





نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



THE MYSTERIOUS LAND

Day 1, January 17th

Today was a long, boring day with terrible[1] weather. The ship didn't leave the port[2], so my journey to the mysterious island wasn't possible – I can see the island through my telescope[3]. The beaches are white and sandy[4] with many palm trees[5] and there are green mountains at its center. It's exciting to imagine what I could find there. I'm sure I'll travel there soon.

Arabic Meaning

١- سئ
٢- ميناء
٣- تلسكوب
٤- رملي
٥- أشجار النخيل
٦- ضوء شمعة
٧- صغير
٨- حجرة/مقصورة
٩- ربما
١٠- القائد
١١- تشرق

Day 2, January 19th

I was sad all day yesterday. The weather was still bad and there were strong winds. I went for long walks around the ship to pass the time during the day. In the evening, I had nothing to do but read my book by the light of a candle[6] in my small[7] cabin[8]. Today the sky is a bit clearer – there is some hope for my journey perhaps[9] – but time seems to move very slowly in this place.

Day 3, January 21st

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night, and this morning I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain[10]: tomorrow the weather will be good with no wind, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave when the sun comes up[11]. I'm very excited: soon I can explore the mysterious island!

Pronunciation





/dʒ/

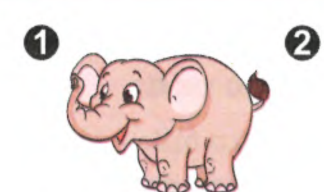
age	عمر
joke	نكتة
dangerous	خطير
Jerry	جيري (اسم شخص)
arrange	يرتب
just	توًا
language	لغة
cage	قفص

/ʒ/

usually	عادة
leisure	رفاهية
pleasure	سرور

2 Look, listen, and repeat:

انظر واسمع وردد:

❶ 
huge

❷ fridge

❸ 
measure

❹ 
treasure

3 Listen. Underline the sound /ʤ/ or /ʒ/. Then write the words in the correct column in the table.

استمع. ضع خط تحت الصوت /ʤ/ أو /ʒ/ . ثم اكتب الكلمات في العمود الصحيح في الجدول.

1. usually
2. age
3. joke
4. leisure
5. Asia
6. dangerous
7. language
8. television
9. cage

/ʤ/	/ʒ/
age	television

4 Listen, read, and repeat:

استمع واقرأ وردد:

1. The bridge in the village is damaged and dangerous.
2. On television, they said that in Asia they found too much treasure to measure.
3. Jerry just arranged to send his luggage to Japan.
4. I usually play games for leisure and pleasure.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

القاهرة - إدارة مدينة بدر (2023)

1. Marco Polo went to the Gobi Desert in ....

a 1250 b 1275 c 1260 d 1270

2. Marco Polo was fascinated by the ....

a water b sand dunes c planes d sea

3. The sand dunes were like huge yellow ....

a pens b waves c camels d plants

4. The .... in the caravan move slowly up and down the dunes.

a sand b dromedaries c plants d water

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. There's nothing in the bag. It's .... القليوبية (2023)

a far b empty c silent d colorful

2. My dad worked for 12 hours yesterday, so he was............................ . بنها (2023)

a exhausted b scared c frightened d pleased

3. We can ride .... across the desert.

a ships b dromedaries c boats d shops

4. Marco Polo used his............................ to see the island. الاسكندرية (2023)

a microscope b caravan c telescope d nightmare

5. .... are groups of camels and people traveling together.

a Islands b Oases c Sand dunes d Caravans

6. The ship left the .... to travel to the island.

a airport b port c station d bus stop

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

desert - legends - fascinated - weather - explorer

I read an interesting book about Marco Polo. He was a famous (1) .... He was (2) .... by the sand dunes. He loved the desert. There were many strange (3) .... about the desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the (4) .... wandered there still.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. fascinated - sand dunes - He - by - was - the.

   ....

2. had breakfast - the ship - with - I - the others - on.

   ....

3. can - island - explore - I - the mysteries.

   ....

4. Gobi Desert - Local people - the dry - called - the - sea.

   ....

5 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A Journey you went in the past

Guiding questions

1- Where did you go?

2- How did you feel?

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 4 ★ Writing




استمع إلى المفردات:

sail	شراع	magical	سحري
skills	مهارات	mood	الجو العام (مزاج)

Adjectives صفات

amazing	مدهش	lovely	جميل
awesome	مذهل	peaceful	هادئ/ ساكن/ آمن
delicious	لذيذ	quiet	هادئ
difficult	صعب	relaxing	مريح
huge	ضخم	traditional	تقليدي
incredible	لا يصدق	wonderful	رائع

Adverbs أحوال

beautifully	بطريقة جميلة	gently	بلطف / برفق

Other words كلمات أخرى

experience	تجربة حياتية	felucca	مركب شراعي
captain	قائد	sunshine	شروق الشمس



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
sail	يبحر	sailed
stop	يتوقف	stopped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
go	يذهب	went
make	يصنع	made



Definitions تعريفات

skills	مهارات	the ability to deal with something well
sail	شراع	a large piece of cloth on a boat that makes the wind push the boat
magical	سحري/فاتن/بديع	very enjoyable and exciting
felucca	مركب شراعي	a traditional Egyptian sailing boat



Study the following

1. **Today I had an amazing experience.**
اليوم مررت بتجربة رائعة.
2. **I went on a felucca on the River Nile!**
ذهبت في فلوكة في نهر النيل!
3. **A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat.**
الفلوكة هو قارب شراعي مصري تقليدي (قديم).
4. **A felucca is difficult to sail.**
يصعب الإبحار بالفلوكة.
5. **We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine.**
ذهبنا ببطء أسفل النهر تحت أشعة الشمس الدافئة.
6. **The boat had two white sails.**
كان للقارب شراعان أبيضان.
7. **It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way to travel.**
كانت هادئة وامنة - طريقة رائعة للسفر.
8. **We stopped to see some incredible things along the way.**
توقفنا لرؤية بعض الأشياء الرائعة على طول الطريق.
9. **I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life.**
رأيت أهرامات الجيزة لأول مرة في حياتي.


استمع إلى النص:

6 January

Today, I had an amazing experience[1]... I went on a felucca[2] on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional[3] Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

A tall man called Kareem was the captain[4] of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the **skills** to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine[5]. The boat had two white **sails** which moved gently[6] in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful[7]– a lovely way to travel.

We stopped to see some incredible[8] things along the way, too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome[9]! The pyramids were huge and the stones were the color of gold. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was wonderful[10].

In the afternoon, we had a delicious[11] lunch on board the felucca and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud. He played beautifully[12] and the music was **magical**[13] and relaxing. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience!

Arabic Meaning

١- تجربة مدهشة
٢- مركب شراعي
٣- تقليدي
٤- قائد
٥- إشراقة دافئة
٦- برفق
٧- ساكنة وامنة
٨- لا يصدق
٩- مدهش
١٠- رائع
١١- لذيذ
١٢- بطريقة جميلة
١٣- بديع/فاتن

Read the diary entry again and answer the questions. Write full sentences:

اقرأ اليومية مرة أخرى وأجب على الأسئلة. اكتب جمل كاملة:

1. Where did the writer go?
   The writer went on a trip down the River Nile on a felucca.
2. How does the writer describe the captain of the boat?
   ____
3. What was the mood on the boat?
   ____
4. What did the writer think of the Great Pyramid?
   ____
5. What did they do in the afternoon?
   ____
6. What was the music like?
   ____



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I went on a .... on the River Nile. الاسكندرية (2023)

a car b felucca c bus d taxi

2. Our trip to Aswan was .... We were all happy.

a amazing b bad c terrible d sad

3. The Pyramids in Giza were .... أسيوط (2023)

a small b tiny c huge d not big

4. The .... sailed the ship to the shore. البحر الأحمر (2023)

a teacher b captain c nurse d vet

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: قنا (2023)

skills - captain - felucca - plane - strong

Today, I had an incredible experience sailing on a (1) ___________ on the River Nile. The (2) ___________ of the felucca is called Kareem. He was very (3) ___________ and had the (4) ___________ to sail it.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last week, I went on a felucca on the River Nile. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome. The Pyramids were **huge** and the stones were the color of gold. They Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three Pyramids, is 147 meters high, It was wonderful. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience in the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch on board the felucca and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud. He played beautifully and the music was magical and relaxing. What a day I had such a wonderful experience.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d: كفر الشيخ - إدارة قلين (2023)

1. The text is about a wonderful day on the ______________ .

a Pyramids b Nile c garden d desert

2. The word "**huge**" means very ______________ .

a short b small c big d fast

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3. He went on a felucca ....

a yesterday   b tomorrow   c today   d last week

B- Answer the following questions:

4. How high is the great pyramid? ....

5. When did he have lunch? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. has - white - two - The boat - sails ....

2. had - experience - Today - an amazing - I. ....

3. Egyptian - A felucca - sailing - boat - a traditional - is. ....

الاسكندرية (2023)

4. had - We - lunch - a delicious - on board - felucca - the ....

5 Write a diary entry of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مذكرة يومية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

A beautiful place

Guiding questions

1- How and when did you go there?

2- What was the weather like?

6 January

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Review

Key vocabulary



ride a camel
يركب الجمل



travel by train
يسافر بالقطار



sail by ship
يبحر بالسفينة



go on a journey
يذهب في رحلة طويلة



go on a voyage
يذهب في رحلة بحرية



take a trip
يقوم برحلة قصيرة

advanced	متقدم
sculptures	منحوتات
clay	صلصال
archaeologist	عالم آثار
caravan	قافلة
fascinated	منبهر
adventure	مغامرة
exhausted	مرهق
terrible	فظيع / سئ
inspiration	إلهام

tool	أداة
sway	يتأرجح
wander	يتجول
wasteland	الأرض القاحلة / البور
legend	قصة خرافية
port	ميناء
telescope	تليسكوب
small cabin	حجرة صغيرة
felucca	قارب شراعى

Adverbs أحوال

beautifully	بطريقة جميلة
silently	بصمت
gently	بلطف / برفق
slowly	بطريقة بطيئة

Adjectives صفات

dangerous	خطير	peaceful	هادئ / امن / ساكن
empty	فارغ	relaxing	مريح
lost	تائه	huge	ضخم
mysterious	غامض	incredible	لا يصدق
awesome	مذهل	lovely	جميل
difficult	صعب	traditional	تقليدي
magical	سحري / بديع		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
imagine	يتخيل	imagined
sail	يبحر	sailed
call after	يسمي باسم	called after
move	يتحرك	moved
roll	يلف / يتدحرج	rolled
last	يدوم	lasted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
fly	يطير	flew
ride	يركب	rode
say	يقول	said
leave	يغادر	left
lose	يتوه / يضل	lost
know	يعرف	knew

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

1 Usage الاستخدام

◉ يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت وانتهت في الماضي.

- My uncle **visited** us.

2 Form التكوين

subject (فاعل) + **verb** (فعل في التصريف الثاني) + باقي الجملة

- My friend **bought** a new phone.

◉ تنقسم الأفعال في التصريف الثاني الى أفعال منتظمة وغير منتظمة.

أولا: الأفعال المنتظمة وهي التي تنتهي بـ d, ed ,ied:

- like → like**d** - cook → cook**ed** - study → stud**ied**

ثانيا : الأفعال الغير منتظمة وهذه الأفعال لا يضاف اليها **ed** وتحفظ كما هي:

- go → went　　eat → ate
- We studied our science lesson.
- She went to the theme park.
- He met his friend Ayman.

---

3 Negative النفي

subject فاعل + **didn't** + **inf** مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة

subject + **never** + التصريف الثاني للفعل + باقي الجملة

- We didn't go to the park.
- Osama never played tennis.

---

4 Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) + **Did** + **subject** فاعل + **inf** مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة?

- Did you change your phone?

وتكون الإجابة اما بـ **Yes** في حالة الإثبات أو بـ **No** في حالة النفي

- Yes, I did.　　- No, I didn't.
- When did you travel to London?
- I traveled two years ago.

---

5 Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday / last (week / month / year) / ago / in the past / in + year - in (2010)

- He went to Giza city last week.



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to paragraphs / emails / diaries

Lesson 3

A journey you went in the past

1

I went to the beach, and it was wonderful! The sand was soft and warm. The soft wind touched my face. It was nice. I enjoyed making sandcastles. The sun was shining, and I enjoyed swimming in the water. It was a beautiful day at the beach.

Lesson 4

A beautiful place

2

Dear Diary,

Today was an exciting day! I went on a trip to a beautiful place. The place was wonderful, with mountains and rivers all around. We took a taxi and reached an amazing place. I took lots of pictures with my friends. It was an amazing trip that I will remember.

Al-Azhar Test

A trip on the River Nile!

3

I went on a trip down the River Nile. I went by felucca. The felucca was difficult to sail, but a tall man called Samy was the captain of the boat. He was very strong and had the skills to sail it. We went down the river in the warm sunshine.

Activity Unit 5

4

New Message

To	laila33@hot.mail.com	**Cc** **Bcc**
From	fatma14@gmail.com	
Subject	Marco Polo - A famous traveler	

Dear Laila,

Thanks for your last email. How are you? I want to tell you about the famous traveler Marco Polo. He was born in the 13th century. He was famous for his great journey to Asia and his adventures and experiences with different cultures. His journeys were very fantastic.

Best wishes,

Fatma

Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

did - see - felucca - went - catch

A : Where did you go yesterday?

B : I ❶ -- on the Nile River!

A : What did you ❷ -- there?

B : I saw a ❸ --.

A : Did you ❹ -- fish?

B : Yes, I ❺ --.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	train	car	taxi	Hurghada	----
2	voyage	poem	journey	trip	----
3	fascinated	train	magical	advanced	----
4	ride	travel	ship	sail	----
5	north	south	trip	west	----

3 Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hani didn't ------------- on the palace tour with the guide.
   a go b went c goes d going
2. Gold is a type of-------------.
   a wood b metal c juice d pens
3. The weather was still ------------- and there were strong winds.
   a terrible b nice c fine d happy
4. We didn't ------------- a vacation this year.
   a has b had c have d having

5. Fares .... angry with his brother yesterday.

a is　　b were　　c was　　d am

6. The .... is a group of camels and people traveling together.

a wasteland　　b caravan　　c festival　　d legend

7. We are .... by the wonderful view of the fields.

a tired　　b empty　　c fascinated　　d ugly

8. This place was quiet and .... .I could relax.

a bad　　b scary　　c peaceful　　d sad

9. To .... means to move from side to side.

a eat　　b ask　　c sway　　d explore

10. They went towards the empty .... of the desert.

a wasteland　　b river　　c room　　d farm

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Ahmed had a relaxing sleep in his cabin last night, and this morning he had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain. The captain said that the weather was good with no wind, so we could go to the island in the morning. The ship left at 6 am. Ahmed was very excited.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Ahmed have a relaxing sleep?

....

2. When did Ahmed have his breakfast?

....

3. Who said that the weather was good?

....

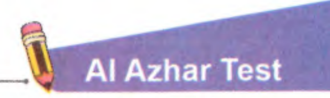
B. Choose the correct answer:

4. The .... left at 6 am.

a ship　　b train　　c bus　　d bike

5. Ahmed was very ....

a happy　　b sad　　c excited　　d bad



5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. you - How - there - did - travel?

----

2. was - Where - last - your - vacation?

----

3. was - a famous - The - about - museum - traveler.

----

4. How - dunes - are - the - big - sand?

----

5. you - legend - Did - the - hear?

----

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A trip on the River Nile

felucca - sail - captain - warm - sunshine



Test on Unit 5

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Mrs Esraa is a teacher of ....

a Arabic b math c English d science

2. Mrs Esraa likes traveling to ....

a one place b different places c America d Italy

3. Mrs Esraa has .... children.

a 3 b 4 c 2 d 5

4. Mrs Esraa went to Giza and visited the ....

a Pyramids b Egyptian museum
c Cairo Tower d station

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat.

a bus b car c felucca d train

2. Marco Polo was an Italian ....

a archeologist b explorer c scientist d architect

3. The weather was .... , so the ship didn't leave the port.

a terrible b cool c amazing d exciting

4. A .... is a very old and famous story.

a caravan b legend c landscape d port

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: أسيوط (2023)

skills - captain - felucca - Ali - plane

Today, I had an incredible experience. I went on a ❶ ____________ on the River Nile. The ❷ ____________ of the felucca is very clever. He is called ❸ ____________ . He was very strong and had the ❹ ____________ to sail it. It's a lovely way to travel.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص التالى واجب عن الأسئلة: القاهرة (2023)

6 January

Today I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

A tall man called Sherif was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Sherif was very strong and had the skills to sail it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so **quiet** and peaceful lovely way to travel.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

   a strong man b amazing experience
   c the Nile River d warm weather

2. The felucca is made of ....

   a metal b wool c wood d leather

3. The opposite of the underlined word "**quiet**" is ....

   a noisy b traditional c lovely d difficult

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is the felucca? ....
5. How was the trip? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. had - I - a relaxing - in my cabin - sleep.

   ....

2. an - explorer - Italian - Marco Polo - was. قنا (2023)

   ....

3. on - a felucca - the Nile - on - I - River - went. البحيرة (2023)

   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

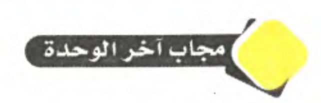
1. .... (Be) you happy in the park yesterday?
2. She .... (don't) read a story last week.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

marco polo was a famous traveler.

---

8 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:



To your friend Laila to tell her about a famous traveler. Your name is Fatma and your email address is fatma14@gmail.com and your friend's email address is laila33@hotmail.com.

Guiding questions

1- Who is the traveler?
2- Why was he famous?

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Myself and others

Taking care

العناية بالنفس



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about making things at home and how to take care of one's self.

يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن صنع الأشياء في المنزل وكيفية الاعتناء بالنفس.

2. Talk about quantities.

يتحدث الطالب عن الكميات.

3. Find the meaning of words in a text.

يجد الطالب معنى الكلمات في النص.

4. Learn about personal care in Ancient Egypt.

يتعلم الطالب عن العناية الشخصية في مصر القديمة.

5. Write instructions to make something and quantities of ingredients.

يكتب الطالب التعليمات لصنع شيء وكميات المقادير.

6. Research and create a poster about different spices.

يبحث الطالب ويعمل ملصق عن التوابل المختلفة.

Lesson 1 ★ Let's make candles!



Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


perfume oil
زيت عطري


wax
مادة الشمع (خام)


drop
قطرة

making candles
صناعة الشمع


wick
فتيل (الشمعة)


popsicle sticks
عصي الايس كريم

Important verbs أفعال هامة


heat (ed)
يسخن


squeeze (d)
يعصر


press (ed)
يضغط


stir (red)
يقلب

Help your child learn new words about making candles. **ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة عن صناعة الشمع.**

Words about measurement كلمات عن القياس

cans	علب	milliliters	ملليلترات
grams	جرامات	packages	حِزم / رزم/ عبوات
kilograms	كيلوجرامات	spoons	ملاعق
liters	لترات	glasses	زجاجات

Other words كلمات أخرى

candle	شمعة	in mind	فى ذهنك
wooden	خشبى	lemon oil	زيت الليمون
hard	صلب	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
cooker	بوتاجاز / موقد	palm wax	شمع النخيل
ingredients	مكونات	cotton rope	حبل من القطن
container	وعاء	step	خطوة
flower petal	بتلات (أوراق الزهرة)	salt	ملح
instructions	تعليمات	sugar	سكر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
need	يحتاج	needed
stir	يقلب	stirred
add	يضيف	added

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
smell	يشم/ يصدر رائحة	smelt / smelled
hold up	يمسك لأعلى	held up
read out	يقرأ بصوت عال	read out



Definitions تعريفات

wick فتيل the little cotton rope inside the candle

Study the following

1. I love making things. — أحب صنع الأشياء.
2. Do you have something in mind? — هل تفكر في شيء ما؟
3. Here are the instructions for making the candles. — ها هي تعليمات صنع الشموع.
4. It's palm wax from Egyptian palm trees. — إنه شمع النخيل من أشجار النخيل المصرية.
5. How much do we need? — كم الكمية التى نحتاجها؟
6. We need some perfume oil. — نحتاج إلى بعض الزيوت العطرية.
7. These are little bottles of lemon oil. — هذه زجاجات صغيرة من زيت الليمون.
8. Squeeze in about 40 drops of oil. — اعصر حوالي ٤٠ قطرة من الزيت.
9. We need one glass for each candle and one wick. — نحتاج كأسًا واحدًا وفتيل واحد لكل شمعة.
10. A wick is a little cotton rope inside the candle. — الفتيل هو عبارة عن حبل قطني صغير داخل الشمعة.
11. We need some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks up in the glasses. — نحتاج إلى بعض عصي الآيس كريم لتثبيت الفتائل في الأكواب.
12. Heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well. — سخن الشمع لإذابته ، ثم قلبه جيدًا.

Language Functions — وظائف لغوية

1. Instruction إعطاء التعليمات

◉ عند إعطاء التعليمات، إما نبدأ بمصدر الفعل"inf" فى حالة الأمر المثبت أو نبدأ بـ"Don't + inf" فى حالة النهي:

- Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles.
- Don't forget your book, Sally.

2. How much? (كم الكمية؟) & How many? (كم العدد؟)

◉ للسؤال عن الكميات نستخدم How much?:

- How much wax do we need?

◉ للسؤال عن العدد نستخدم How many?:

- How many drops of oil do we need?



1 Listen and read. What do Laila and her mom make?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا تصنع ليلى ووالدتها؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:



Mom : Hi, Laila, I love making things. Why don't we make something now?

Laila : That's a great idea. Do you have something in mind?

Mom : I have some perfume oil(1). We can use it to make candles.

Laila : Candles? Wow! I love it.

Mom : Here are the instructions(2). Can you read them out to me?

Laila : Right. First, we need some **wax**(3).

Mom : Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian palm trees(4). It makes really nice candles. How much do we need?

Laila : It says, "Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles."

Mom : Okay, there's about 500 grams here. That's enough. What's next?

Laila : We need some perfume oil.

Mom : Here. These are little bottles of lemon oil(5). Mmm … they smell lovely(6). How much do we need?

Laila : The instructions say, "**Squeeze**(7) in about 40 **drops**(8) of oil."

Mom : Fine. And we can take about 15 flowers and **press**(9) them on the tops of the candles.

Laila : Yes, good idea. Then we need one glass for each candle and one **wick**(10) – that's the little cotton rope(11) inside the candle.

Arabic Meaning

١. زيت عطري
٢. تعليمات
٣. مادة الشمع
٤. أشجار النخيل
٥. زيت الليمون
٦. يصدر رائحة جميلة
٧. أعصر
٨. قطرات
٩. يضغط
١٠. فتيل
١١. حبل من القطن

Mom : Oh, yes. And we need some **popsicle sticks**[12] to hold the wicks up in the glasses.

Laila : So that's three glasses, three wicks, and three popsicle sticks, right?
Now, what do we need to do first?

Mom : Let's see… "**Step one**[13]: **Heat**[14] the wax to **melt**[15] it, then **stir**[16] it well."

١٢. عصي الآيس كريم
١٣- الخطوة الأولى
١٤- قم بتسخين
١٥- يذيب
١٦- يقلب

Tip!

When you listen for quantities, remember to listen/look for numbers and words about measurements. For example, kilograms, grams, liters, milliliters, spoons, packages, cans.

نصيحة: عندما تستمع إلى الكميات، تذكر أن تستمع / تبحث عن أرقام وكلمات حول القياسات. على سبيل المثال، كيلوجرامات، جرامات، لترات، مليلترات، ملاعق، عبوات، علب.

2 Now complete the instructions for making soap.

الآن أكمل التعليمات لصنع الصابون.

add - ~~bowl~~ - heat - press - stir

1. Put the ingredients for your soap in a ❶ ___bowl___.
2. ❷ ____________ the ingredients on a cooker.
3. Next, ❸ ____________ the ingredients with a wooden spoon.
4. Take the ingredients off the cooker.
5. When the ingredients are hard and cool, ❹ ____________ them into a soap container.
6. You can ❺ ____________ flower petals to make the soap look and smell lovely.

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

When you brush your hair, it spreads the natural oils from your skin through your hair from the roots to the ends. This protects your hair from heat and dirt and makes it look shiny and healthy.

عندما تقوم بتمشيط شعرك، فذلك يقوم بتوزيع الزيوت الطبيعية من جلدك خلال شعرك من الجذور إلى الأطراف. وهذا يحمي شعرك من الحرارة والأتربة ويجعله يبدو لامعًا وصحيًا.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. .... are very important.
   - a Paper
   - b Candles
   - c Pens
   - d Pencils
2. We use candles everywhere to get ....
   - a water
   - b wood
   - c light
   - d paper
3. Some people use candles on special ....
   - a occasions
   - b schools
   - c houses
   - d hospitals
4. Some people use candles to decorate their ....
   - a shops
   - b homes
   - c rooms
   - d canals

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We need .... to make candles. الدقهلية (2023)
   - a oil
   - b wood
   - c paper
   - d wax
2. Put little sugar in the tea and .... it. القاهرة (2023)
   - a cut
   - b stir
   - c drop
   - d throw
3. .... the wax to melt it. أسيوط (2023)
   - a Heat
   - b Press
   - c Squeeze
   - d Cool
4. A wick is a little cotton .... inside the candle. المنوفية (2023)
   - a drop
   - b rope
   - c wood
   - d stick
5. Laila and her mom need some wax to make .... البحر الأحمر (2023)
   - a cakes
   - b toys
   - c candles
   - d candies

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

popsicle - perfume - soap - candles - wax

Many years ago, our homes didn't have electricity. People used (1) ------------ instead. Candles are made from (2) ------------. We can make candles at home. You need some (3) ------------ oil, some wax, one wick and (4) ------------ sticks.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. sticks - We - popsicle - some - need.

---

2. do - much - we - How - need - wax ? المنوفية (2023)

---

3. are - lemon oil - There - of - little bottles.

---

4. makes - really - It - candles - nice. القليوبية (2023)

---

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what does Sally make

---

2. that s three glasses.

---

6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Making candles at home

wax - heat

Lesson 2 Part 1 ★ Ancient Egyptians ate well





استمع إلى المفردات:

paintings	رسومات / لوحات	festivals	احتفالات
barley	شعير	herbs	أعشاب

Other words كلمات أخرى

The Nile floods	فيضانات النيل	goose (geese)	وزة (إوز)
garlic	ثوم	figs	تين
lentils	عدس	salt	ملح
cream	قشطة	taste better	ذو مذاق أفضل
wheat	قمح	fruit drink	مشروب فاكهة
ducks	بط		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
depend on	يعتمد على	depended on
dry	يجفف	dried
preserve	يحفظ	preserved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
take care of	يعتني بـ	took care of
grow	يزرع	grew
keep	يحافظ على	kept

Definitions تعريفات

barley شعير a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread and other things

herbs أعشاب plants with a strong taste often used in cooking

festival احتفال a special occasion when people play music and eat nice food

preserve يحفظ add something to food to make it last for longer

Help your child find the meaning of words in a text. ساعد طفلك فى أن يجد معانى الكلمات فى نص.

Where food can come from:

من أين يأتى الطعام:

1. cream ⟶ cows
2. bread ⟶ wheat or barley
3. honey ⟶ bees
4. eggs ⟶ geese



Study the following

1. What did the Ancient Egyptians eat and drink?

- ماذا كان يأكل ويشرب القدماء المصريين؟

2. Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people took care of their bodies and ate very well.

- تظهر رسومات المصريين القدماء أن الناس اعتنوا باجسادهم وأكلوا بشكل جيد.

3. The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables.

- ساعدت مياه النيل الفلاحون المصريين فى زراعة الكثير من الفاكهة والخضراوات.

4. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often depended on how much water came from the Nile floods.

- فى هذه الفترة، اعتمدت زراعة الخضراوات على كمية المياه القادمة من فيضانات النيل.

5. People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes.

- غالبًا ما استخدم الناس العسل مع الخبز والقشطة لصناعة الكيك.

6. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

- استخدموا أيضًا القليل من البلح والتين لعمل عصائر من الفاكهة.

7. Some families also knew how to use spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better.

- عرف بعض العائلات كيفية استخدام التوابل والأعشاب لإضافة طعم افضل لطعام الطهى.

8. They also knew how to preserve food.

- عرفوا أيضًا كيفية حفظ الطعام.

9. They dried fish or used salt to preserve it.

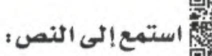
- جففوا الأسماك أو استخدموا الملح لحفظ الطعام.

10. They used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

- استخدموا البرطمانات لحفظ الفاكهة والخضراوات لفصل الشتاء.

1 Listen and read about food in Ancient Egypt. What did families use to make their cooking taste better?

استمع واقرأ عن الطعام فى مصر القديمة. ما الذى استخدمه العائلات لجعل الطعام مذاق أفضل؟



استمع إلى النص:

Paintings[1] from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care[2] of their bodies and ate very well! So what did the Ancient Egyptians eat and drink?

The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often depended[3] on how much water came from the Nile floods[4]. Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew onions, garlic[5], lentils, and beans, and people cooked with all these vegetables. Farmers also grew wheat and barley. People used this to make bread and they ate a lot of this every day.

Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They probably[6] ate a few fish and birds like ducks, geese, and chickens. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or goats.

There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey! People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs[7] to make sweet fruit drinks.

Some families also knew how to use spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to preserve[8] food. For example, they dried fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars[9] to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

Arabic Meaning

١. رسومات
٢. اعتنوا بـ
٣. اعتمدوا
٤. فيضانات النيل
٥. الثوم
٦. من المحتمل
٧. التين
٨. يخزن
٩. برطمانات

2 Look at the words in bold in the text. Match them to their meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات المحددة فى النص. وصلها بمعانيها:

1. a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread and other things barley
2. plants with a strong taste often used in cooking ____________
3. a special occasion when people play music and eat nice food ____________
4. add something to food to make it last for longer ____________

Lesson 2 Part 2

Language focus

Countable & Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns	أسماء يمكن عدها
Uncountable nouns	أسماء لا يمكن عدها

أولا : الأسماء التى يمكن عدها Countable nouns (C)

- الأسماء التى تعد إما أن تأتى مفردة فيسبقها a / an / one أو تأتى جمع دون إضافة a / an

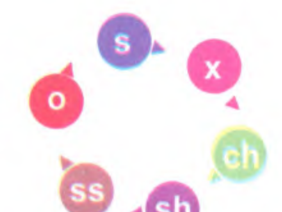
- الأسماء التى تعد أما أن تنتهى بالنهايات القادمة أو تجمع جمع شاذ.



- كيف نكّون الجمع من الأسماء المفردة التى تعد:

١- إما بإضافة s آخر الاسم: book → books

٢- أو بإضافة es آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الموضحة ←:



bus	→	buses	beach	→	beaches
tomato	→	tomatoes	glass	→	glasses

٣- أو بإضافة ies إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (y) وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف (y).

- أما إذا سبق حرف (y) حرف متحرك لا يحذف.



٤- أو بإضافة ves آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ f / fe حيث تحذف كما يلى : knife → knives

٥- وهناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هى:

mouse	→	mice	ox	→	oxen
man	→	men	woman	→	women
child	→	children	tooth	→	teeth
goose	→	geese			

Uncountable nouns (U) ثانيًا: الأسماء التى لا تعد

- الأسماء التى لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد ومن أمثلتها كل المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة مثل:

water / sugar / milk / chocolate / grass / oil / honey / soup / bread / money / homework / time / traffic / juice / meat / fish

1. How many & How much:

• How many:

◉ نستخدم (كم عدد ...؟ How many?) للسؤال عن الأسماء التى تُعد، مثل أوراق الشجر أو الليمون.

◉ يمكننا الرد على السؤال بـ (How many?) برقم (a/an/five/twenty) أو كمية تقريبية يسبقها (some / a few / a lot).

Ex: How many lemons do we need for the lemonade?

- We need five lemons.
- We need a few lemons.

ملحوظة: دائما يأتي بعد How many اسم يُعد جمع كما في المثال السابق.

• How much:

◉ نستخدم (كم كمية ...؟ How much..?) للسؤال عن الأسماء التى لا تُعد، مثل الشاي أو السكر.

◉ لا يمكننا الرد على هذا السؤال إلا بكمية تقريبية تسبقها (some / a little / a lot).

Ex: How much oil do we need? - We need a little oil.

2. some / any:

- تستخدم كلمة some بمعنى (بعض) فى الجملة المثبتة. ويأتى بعد some الأسماء المعدودة والأسماء الغير معدودة.

Ex: There are some girls from Luxor in my class.

- وتستخدم any بمعنى (أى) فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال. ويأتى بعد any الأسماء المعدودة والأسماء الغير معدودة.

Ex: There aren't any tigers in Egypt.

Ex: Are there any lemons?

3. A lot of / A few / A little:

• A lot of

◉ نستخدم **a lot of** بمعنى "كثيرا من" أمام الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) والاسماء التي لا تعد:

Ex: There are a lot of students in my class. (اسم جمع)

Ex: I like eating a lot of chocolate. (اسم لا يعد)

• A few

◉ نستخدم **a few** بمعنى "قليل من" أمام الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) فقط:

Ex: There are a few students in my class.

• A little

◉ نستخدم **a little** بمعنى "قليل من" أمام الأسماء التي لا تعد:

Ex: There is a little sugar in my tea.

4. There is & There are:

• There is / isn't يوجد / لا يوجد للمفرد

◉ نستخدم **there is / isn't** مع الأسماء التي تعد المفردة والأسماء التي لا تعد.

Ex: There is a car in front of my house. (كلمة مفرد)

Ex: There is sugar in my tea. (كلمة لا تعد)

• There are / aren't يوجد / لا يوجد للجمع

◉ نستخدم **there are / aren't** مع الأسماء التي تعد (للجمع).

• There are lemons in the fridge.

Practice

1 Use the expressions in the box to complete the sentences from the text. Then read and check:

استخدم المصطلحات من النص لتكمل الجمل:

a few - a little - a lot of - some

1. The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow .... fruit and vegetables.
2. Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate .... meat, usually at festivals.

3. They also ate .... eggs and cheese from cows or goats.

4. They also used .... dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

2 Look at the words in the list. Write C (countable) or U (uncountable)

انظر إلى الكلمات الموجودة في القائمة. اكتب C (يُعد) أو U (لا يُعد)

1. sugar ....U....
2. mango ....
3. traffic ....
4. store ....
5. oil ....
6. student ....
7. juice ....
8. money ....
9. ticket ....
10. homework ......
11. cow ....
12. honey ....

3 Complete the dialogs with How much or How many:

أكمل المحادثة بكم كمية؟ أو كم عدد؟

1. **Hani** : ..How much.. milk do you want in your coffee, Grandma?

   Grandma : Just a little milk, thanks Hani.

2. **Fareeda** : .... students are there in your English class, Dalia?

   Dalia : There are about forty, I think.

3. **Sherif** : .... math problems did you do yesterday?

   Karim : Just a few. They were difficult.

4. **Rana** : I'm going to the market now. .... tomatoes do we need?

   Mom : Please get a kilo of tomatoes and some fruit.

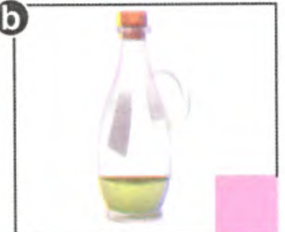
5. **Hana** : .... honey do we do we have, Ayman?

   Ayman : We have a lot. See the jar on the left.

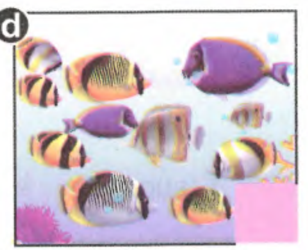
4 Look at the photos. Complete the sentences with a lot of, a little or a few

انظر إلى الصور ، أكمل الجمل بـ a lot of / a little a few /









1. There's a lot of traffic.
2. There's .... oil.
3. There are .... leaves.
4. There are .... fish.

5 Circle the correct answer:

ضع دائرة على الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Please hurry. We don't have a lot of / a few time.
2. Can I have a little / a few sugar in my coffee, please?
3. There isn't some / any bread. Can you buy some / a few?
4. There are a few / a little lemons in the fridge, so we don't need any more.
5. How many / much candles does 450 grams of wax make?
6. How many / much cooking oil do I need to put in the pan?

6 Complete the first part of the recipe with expressions from the box:

أكمل الجزء الأول من وصفة الطعام بالتعبيرات من القائمة :

a few - a little - a lot of - an - half a cup

How to make chocolate chip cookies

(make 12 cookies)

Take (1) .... of flour and add (2) .... salt. Mix with 120 grams of butter and 150 grams of sugar. Add (3) .... egg and (4) .... drops of vanilla essence[1]. Cut 150 grams of dark chocolate[2] into (5) .... small pieces. Stir the chocolate pieces into the mixture[3]. Then ...



Arabic Meaning

١. خلاصة الفانيليا
٢. شيكولاتة غامقة
٣. خليط





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. People used .... and wheat to make bread.

   a wood b paper c barley d meat

2. .... are plants with a strong taste often used in cooking.

   a Hair b Herbs c Bees d Geese

3. "..............................." means adding something to food to make it last for longer.

   a Throw b Preserve c Play d Draw

4. A .... is a special occasion when people play music and eat nice food.

   a barley b festival c goose d painting

5. Ancient Egyptians used .... to preserve food. الغربية (2023)

   a candles b salt c papers d metals

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

herbs - lost - paintings - barley - preserve

We know many things about Ancient Egyptians from (1) ------------- . They used wheat and (2) ------------- to make bread. They knew how to use (3) ------------- to make food taste better. They also knew how to (4) ------------- food.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. plants - Herbs - are - a strong - taste - with.

   ----

2. Egyptians - bread - Ancient - used - to make - wheat.

   ----

3. knew - also - They - preserve - food - how to.

   ----

4. dried - it - They - fish - preserve - to.

----

5. much - How - do - milk - you - want - your coffee - in?

----

6. did - What - the - Ancient - drink - Egyptians?

----

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I bought .... (a little) books yesterday. أسيوط (2023)
2. How .... (much) lemons do we need today? أسيوط (2023)
3. .... (How many) honey do we have, Ayman? كفر الشيخ (2023)
4. There aren't .... (some) tigers in Egypt. القليوبية (2023)
5. We use a .... (few) butter to cook.
6. How .... (many) rice do you need?
7. Do you have .... (some) pens?
8. The streets are empty. There's .... (a few) traffic.
9. How .... (much) cups of coffee do you drink?
10. There .... (aren't) any sugar in the kitchen.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. farmers grew wheat and barley

----

2. how many candles do you want

Lesson 3 Part 1 ★ Reading

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

astonished	مندهش	throne	عرش (الملك/ الملكة)
caretaker	مقدم الرعاية	crown	تاج
scepter	صولجان (عصا الملك)	dust	تراب

Other words كلمات أخرى

king	ملك	statue	تمثال
queen	ملكة	dining room	حجرة الطعام
palace	قصر	curtains	ستائر
royal children	الأطفال الملكيين	carpet	سجادة
prince	أمير	furniture	أثاث
princess	أميرة	otherwise	والا
paintings	لوحات		

Adjectives صفات

missing	مفقود	colorful	كثير الألوان
precious	ثمين / ذو قيمة	empty	فارغ
strange	غريب	dirty	متسخ

Adverbs الظروف

carefully	بعناية / بحرص	quickly	بسرعة
dangerously	بشكل خطير	simply	ببساطة
finally	أخيرًا	usually	عادةً



Phrases and Prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

full of	مليء بـ	at once	في الحال
wash ... off	يغسل ... من	have a bath	يستحم



Definitions تعريفات

caretaker (n)	القائم بالرعاية (اسم)	people who look after and clean a building....
leaning	مستند/متكئ على	moving the top part of the body in a particular direction
astonished	مندهش	very surprised
dust	تراب	dry dirt in the form of powder that covers surfaces

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
notice	يلاحظ	noticed
pick up	يلتقط	picked up
knock on	يطرق/ يدق	knocked on
damage	يتلف	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
understand	يفهم	understood
hear	يسمع	heard
come	يأتى	come
lean	يستند على	leant / leaned



Study the following

1. Peter lives in a big palace. - يعيش بيتر فى قصر كبير.
2. The palace is old and no one lives there now. - القصر قديم ولا أحد يعيش فيه الآن.
3. The rooms are full of interesting and precious things. - الغرف مليئة بالأشياء الثمينة والمثيرة للاهتمام.
4. Peter notices something strange about the big painting. - لاحظ بيتر شيئًا غريبًا في اللوحة الكبيرة.
5. The king's place in the painting is empty. - مكان الملك في اللوحة فارغ.
6. Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting. - يتفاجأ بيتر وينظر بعناية إلى اللوحة.
7. He can see a crown and a scepter, but not the king. - يمكنه رؤية التاج والصولجان، لكن ليس الملك.

8 **Peter knows he must find the missing king at once.**

- عرف بيتر أنه يجب أن يجد الملك المفقود في الحال.

9 **He hears singing and knocks on the door.**

- سمع الغناء وطرق الباب.

10 **I spend years sitting in that painting.**

- قضيت سنوات طويلة جالس فى هذه اللوحة.

11 **In the future, please clean the paintings in the palace!**

- من فضلك نظف اللوحات في القصر في المستقبل!

12 **He runs back to the painting to pick up his scepter.**

- جرى إلى اللوحة ليلتقط صولجانه.

1 Listen and read. Why does the king leave his painting?

استمع واقرأ. لماذا ترك الملك لوحته؟

Tapescript  نص الاستماع

 استمع إلى النص:

The Missing King

1. Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers[1]. The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are full of interesting and precious things – old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.
2. One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the throne with a crown[2] on his head and a long scepter[3] in his hand. The queen and the royal children – the prince and the princess – are next to him. But today, the king's place in the painting is empty: he is missing!
3. Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting again. He can see the crown and scepter, but not the king. Also, the scepter is leaning[4] dangerously over the princess's head. Peter knows he must find the king at once!
4. He goes through all of the rooms in the palace. He looks behind doors and curtains. Finally, he comes to the royal bathroom. He hears singing and knocks

Arabic Meaning

١. مقدموا الرعاية
٢. تاج
٣. صولجان
٤. يميل/يتكئ على

on the door. "Who is it?" says the king. "Please be quiet! I'm enjoying a hot bath!" Peter is astonished (5). When the king comes out, he says to him, "I spend years sitting in that painting and no one ever comes to wash the dust (6) off me. Dust damages(7) the painting, so I simply had to have a bath (8)."

5. Peter understands but explains to the king that his scepter is about to fall on the princess. "Thank you, my boy," the king says. "I will hurry back. But in the future, please clean the paintings in the palace. Otherwise (9), they'll be damaged forever!" and he runs back to the painting to pick up (10) the scepter.
6. Peter now cleans all the paintings in the palace so that they aren't damaged – and so that no one has to leave their painting to have a good bath!

٥. مندهش
٦. تراب
٧. يدمر
٨. حمام/دُش
٩. وإلا
١٠. يلتقط



Tip!

You can use pictures in a story to help you understand new words. You can also look at the words around an unknown word in a text to help you understand it. For example, is there an article (a / an/ the) before the word, or an adjective? If there is, it's a noun. You can then look at the sentences around it and think what the noun could mean in the context.

يمكنك استخدام الصور في قصة لمساعدتك فى فهم الكلمات الجديدة. يمكنك أيضًا إلقاء نظرة على الكلمات الموجودة حول كلمة غير معروفة في النص لمساعدتك على فهمها. على سبيل المثال، هل هناك أداة (a / an/ the) قبل الكلمة، أو صفة؟ إذا كان هناك، فهو اسم. يمكنك بعد ذلك إلقاء نظرة على الجمل قبل وبعد الاسم والتفكير في ما يمكن أن يعنيه الاسم في السياق.

Lesson 3 Part 2

Clil: Social studies



استمع إلى المفردات:



Ancient Egyptian traditions


soap
صابون


shampoo
شامبو


hairbrush
فرشاة شعر


toothpaste
معجون أسنان


toothbrush
فرشاة أسنان


cream
كريم


perfume
عطر



breath mints
معطر الفم بالنعناع

stick	عصا
incense	بخور
cardamom	الحبهان / الهيل (نوع من التوابل)

cinnamon	نبات القرفة
powder	مسحوق

Adjectives صفات

popular	شائع	cheap	رخيص
expensive	غالي الثمن	ancient	قديم
common	معروف / شائع	fresh	منعش / طازج

Other words كلمات أخرى

personal care	العناية الشخصية	rosemary	إكليل الجبل (نوع من الأعشاب)
herbs and spices	أعشاب وتوابل	papyrus	ورق بردي
recipe	وصفة	pine seeds	بذور الصنوبر
cone shape	شكل مخروطي	products	منتجات
iris flowers	زهور السوسن	rock salt	الملح الصخري
mint candies	حلوى النعناع	square candies	حلوى مربعة
melon	الشمام		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
rub	يدلك / يفرك	rubbed
cover	يغطي	covered
mix	يخلط	mixed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
wear	يرتدي	wore
leave	يترك / يغادر	left



Study the following

1. **Many of the products we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt.**
   - العديد من المنتجات التي نستخدمها اليوم للعناية الشخصية تم استخدامها لأول مرة في مصر القديمة.
2. **The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes.** - أحب قدماء المصريين العطور القوية.
3. **The perfume was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients.**
   - كان العطر باهظ الثمن لأنه يحتوي على الكثير من المكونات.
4. **Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals.** - وكانت العطور الأرخص ثمناً تصنع من الزهور والأعشاب وبعض أنواع المعادن.
5. **They pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense.**
   - قاموا بضغط المكونات الجافة في شكل مخروطي لصنع البخور.
6. **To clean their teeth. Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush.**
   - استخدم قدماء المصريين نوعًا من فرشاة الأسنان لتنظيف أسنانهم.
7. **They put this dry powder directly onto their teeth.**
   - وضعوا هذا المسحوق الجاف مباشرة على أسنانهم.
8. **To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies.** - صنع المصريون القدماء حلوى النعناع للحفاظ على أفواههم منتعشة طوال اليوم.
9. **They heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small square candies.** - قاموا بتسخين الخليط على النار، وتركوه ليبرد، وقطعوه إلى حلوى مربعة صغيرة.

2 Read the text. Which of the things from Exercise 1 are mentioned?

اقرأ النص. أى الأشياء من التمرين (١) مذكورة به؟

PERSONAL CARE[1] IN THE PAST

Many of the products[2] we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt!

Perfumes

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was expensive[3] because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom[4] and cinnamon[5].

Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals[6], then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape[7] to make incense[8]. In Ancient Egyptian paintings you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals[9]!

Toothpaste

To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush[10] – a stick with small pieces of papyrus[11] tied[12] to it at one end. The ingredients of their toothpaste[13] were a mint, rock salt[14], pepper, and dried iris flowers[15]. They put this dry powder[16] directly[17] onto their teeth and rubbed[18] it with their toothbrushes.

Breath Mints

To keep their mouths fresh[19] all day, the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies[20]. They mixed cinnamon, melon[21], pine seeds[22], and some nuts together with honey. Then they heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small square candies[23].

Arabic Meaning

١- العناية الشخصية
٢- منتجات
٣- غالي
٤- الحبهان
٥- نبات القرفة
٦- معادن
٧- شكل مخروطي
٨- بخور
٩- مهرجانات
١٠- فرشاة أسنان
١١- ورق بردي
١٢- ربط
١٣- معجون أسنان
١٤- الملح الصخري
١٥- زهور السوسن المجففة
١٦- مسحوق
١٧- مباشرة
١٨- يدلك/يفرك
١٩- منتعش
٢٠- حلوى النعناع
٢١- شمام
٢٢- بذور الصنوبر
٢٣- حلوى مربعة

3 Put the words from the box in the correct columns in the table. Can you add any other words? Which are countable and uncountable?

ضع الكلمات فى القائمة فى التصنيف الصحيح فى الجدول. هل يمكن إضافة كلمات أخرى؟ أى منها يعد أو لا يعد؟

**cardamom - cinnamon - copper - lemon - melon - mint
orange - pepper - rosemary - salt**

Fruit	Herbs	Spices	Minerals



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The king is sitting on his .... next to the queen. الدقهلية (2023)
   a throne b bed c scepter d seat
2. Kings live in a ....
   a garden b palace c school d shop
3. I need wash my hair. There is no .... الاسكندرية (2023)
   a sugar b toothpaste c shampoo d cream
4. A king wears a .... on his head.
   a crown b carpet c throne d scepter
5. We use .... to wash our face.
   a soup b toothbrush c soap d perfume
6. We use a .... to brush our teeth.
   a lemon b cone c pen d toothbrush

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

personal - rosemary - ingredients - expensive - perfume

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular 1 .... was called kapet. It was 2 .... because it had a lot of 3 .... , some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like 4 .... and mint.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. Egyptian - candies - mint - Ancient - made. المنوفية (2023)

....

2. perfumes - from - Cheaper - flowers - were made.

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3. Egyptians - **Ancient** - candies - made - mint.

4. is leaning - princess's - **The scepter** - head - over - the.

5. are - things - **Rooms** - interesting - full of - and precious.

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. personal care products were in Ancient Egypt

2. Where does peter find the king

5 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Personal care in Ancient Egypt

perfumes - toothbrushes

Lessons 4&5

Writing & Project

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

salt dough	عجينة من الملح
recipe	وصفة
ingredients	مكونات
secret	سر

method	طريقة
preparation time	وقت التحضير
baking tray	صينية الخبز
combination	مزيج/ توليفة

Other words كلمات أخرى

plain flour	دقيق لجميع الأغراض
the oven	الفرن
low temperature	درجة حرارة منخفضة
mixture	الخليط
flat surface	سطح مستوٍ
shape	شكل
items	الأصناف
3D objects	أشياء ثلاثية الأبعاد

secret	سري/ سر
cloth	قماش
souks	الأسواق
souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية
besides	بالإضافة إلى
delicious dishes	أطباق لذيذة
tourists	سائحون

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
heat	يسخن	heated
form	يشكل	formed
bake	يخبز	baked
chop	يقطع	chopped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
put	يضع	put
leave	يترك	left
cut out	يقطع	cut out



Study the following

1. **Heat the oven on a low temperature.**

- سخن الفرن على درجة حرارة منخفضة

2. **Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl.**

- اخلط الدقيق والملح فى إناء كبير.

3. **Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball.**

- أضف قليل من الماء ثم كمية أكثر وقلب الخليط حتى يبدأ فى تكوين كرة.

4. **Put the ball of dough on a flat surface and work it into the shape you want.**

- ضع الكرة من العجينة على سطح مستوٍ وشكلها حسب ما تريد.

5. **Put your finished items on a baking tray.**

- ضع الأشياء التى انتهيت منها فى صينية الخبيز.

6. **Leave the items to cool, then paint them.**

- اترك الاشياء لتبرد ثم لونها.

7. **Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country.**

- تشتهر مصر بتوابلها التي تستخدم في الطبخ المنزلي والمطاعم في جميع أنحاء البلاد.

8. **We can also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth.**

- نستطيع استخدامها أيضًا في صنع العطور والأدوية وتلوين القماش.

9. **They also make great souvenirs and beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.**

- يعتبروا كهدايا تذكارية رائعة ويتم تغليفهم بطريقة جميلة للسياح الذين يزورون متاجر التوابل والأسواق.

1 Read the recipe. Add the headings from the box:

اقرأ الوصفة وأضف العناوين فى القائمة إلى الوصفة :

Ingredients - Method - preparation time

Salt dough recipe[1]

Like Save



1. Preparation time

   10 minutes + 3 hours for cooking

2. Ingredients

   1 cup of plain flour (about 250g)

   ½ a cup of salt (about 125g)

   ½ a cup of water (about 125ml)

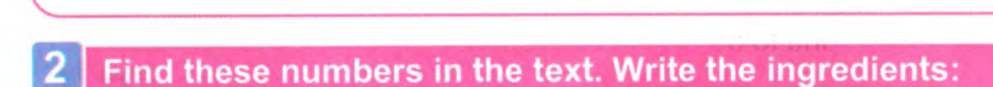
3. Method

   1. Heat the oven on a low temperature[2].
   2. Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture[3] until it starts to form a ball.
   3. Put the ball of dough on a flat surface[4] and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out shapes, numbers, or letters, or use the dough to make 3D objects.

4. Put your finished items on a **baking tray**[5] and bake in the oven for 3 hours until it is hard[6].
5. Leave the items[7] to cool, then paint them.

Arabic Meaning

١. وصفة عجينة الملح
٢. درجة حرارة
٣. الخليط
٤. سطح مستوٍ
٥. صينية الخبيز
٦. صلب
٧. الاشياء



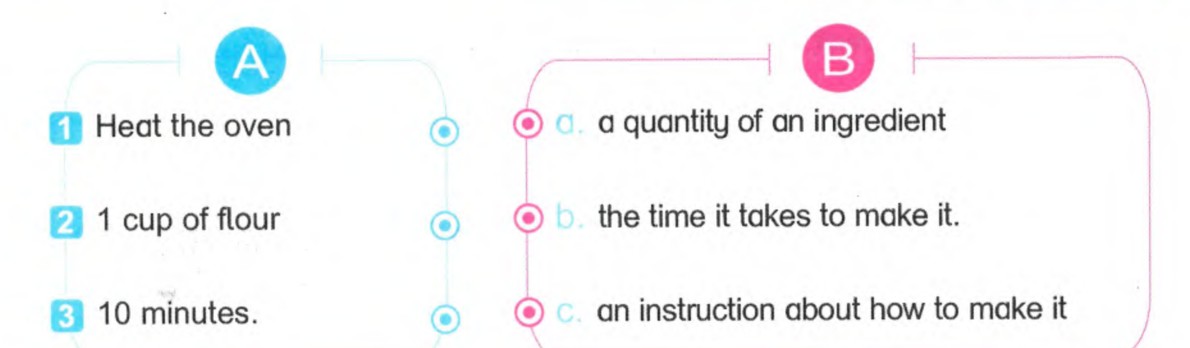
2 Find these numbers in the text. Write the ingredients:

أوجد هذه الأرقام فى النص. اكتب المكونات:

1. 125 milliliters: $\frac{1}{2}$ a cup
2. 250 grams: ------------------------------
3. 125 grams: ------------------------------

3 Match the expressions to their functions in the recipe.

صل التعبيرات بوظيفتها في وصفة الطعام.



A	B
1 Heat the oven	a. a quantity of an ingredient
2 1 cup of flour	b. the time it takes to make it.
3 10 minutes.	c. an instruction about how to make it

Project

1 Read the text. What do we use spices for?

اقرأ النص فى أى شىء نستخدم التوابل؟







استمع إلى النص:

Egyptian flavors[1]!

Egypt is famous for[2] its spices[3] that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations[4] of different spices are a secret[5] ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices besides delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume and medicine[6], and to color cloth[7]. They also make great souvenirs[8], and beautifully packaged[9] for tourists visiting spice stores[10] and souks[11].

Arabic Meaning

١. النكهات المصرية
٢. شهير بـ
٣. بهارات / توابل
٤. توليفة
٥. سر
٦. الدواء
٧. قماش
٨. هدايا تذكارية
٩. تعبأ
١٠. المتاجر
١١. الأسواق



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tourists buy .... when they visit Egypt. المنوفية (2023)

a houses b souvenirs c cars d cats

2. I put the dough on a baking .... in the oven. كفر الشيخ (2023)

a ball b tray c paper d book

3. Can you tell me the .... to make chocolate cake? كفر الشيخ (2023)

a numbers b homework c ingredients d lessons

4. Mix the flour and salt in a large ....

a ball b bowl c roll d method

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

flat - stir - flour - bowl - hours

This is salt dough recipe. Heat the oven on a low temperature. Mix the (1) .... and salt in a large (2) .... Add a little water, then a little more and (3) .... the mixture until it starts to form a ball. Put the ball of dough on a (4) .... surface and work it into the shape you want.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: أسيوط (2023)

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. And we don't only use spices to cook food, we also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. Spices are sold in stores, on the streets, and in the souks. Fresh, colorful and beautifully packaged spices are one of the favorite **souvenirs** that tourists buy when they visit Egypt.

A- Choose the correct answer:

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

a Egyptian restaurants b Egyptian stores

c Egyptian spices d Egyptian streets

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

2. The underlined word "**souvenirs**" refers to ....

a gifts b herbs c food d stores

3. We can buy spices from ....

a library b stores c school d bank

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is Egypt famous for?

- -

5. Write two uses of the Egyptian spices.

- -

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. for - do - What - use - spices - we? - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
2. is - for - spices - Egypt - famous - its. - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
3. a low - the - oven - Heat - temperature - on. - - - - - - - - - - - - -
4. medicine - We can - to make - use them - perfume - and.

- -

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. Many tourists love egyptian flavors - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
2. What things does hisham need to make soap

- -

6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Making salt dough

Guiding phrases

heat - the oven - baking tray

- -
- -
- -
- -

Review

Key vocabulary



perfume oil
زيت عطري



wax
مادة الشمع



drop
قطرة



wick
فتيل (الشمعة)



popsicle sticks
عصي الايس كريم



soap
صابون



shampoo
شامبو



hairbrush
فرشاة شعر



toothpaste
معجون أسنان



toothbrush
فرشاة أسنان



cream
كريم



perfume
عطر



breath mints
معطر الفم بالنعناع



Important verbs أفعال هامة



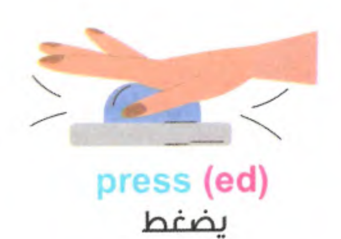
squeeze (d)
يعصر



heat (ed)
يسخن



stir (red)
يقلب



press (ed)
يضغط

Other words كلمات أخرى

personal care	العناية الشخصية
crown	تاج
instructions	تعليمات
cinnamon	نبات القرفة
square candies	حلوى مربعة
souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية
scepter	صولجان (عصا الملك)
throne	عرش
caretaker	مقدم الرعاية
curtains	ستائر
candle	شمعة
ingredients	مكونات
royal children	الأطفال الملكيين
paintings	لوحات / رسومات
herbs and spices	أعشاب وتوابل
incense	بخور
recipe	وصفة
flavors	النكهات
combination	مزيج/ توليفة
astonished	مندهش

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
add	يضيف	added
notice	يلاحظ	noticed
knock	يطرق / يدق	knocked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
smell	يشم / يصدر رائحة	smelt / smelled
hold up	يمسك لأعلى	held up
read out	يقرأ بصوت عال	read out
lean	يستند على / يميل	leant / leaned

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Countable & Uncountable nouns

• تنقسم الأسماء إلى:

Countable nouns	أسماء يمكن عدها
Uncountable nouns	أسماء لا يمكن عدها

Countable nouns (C) أولا : الأسماء التى يمكن عدها

– الأسماء التى تعد إما أن تأتى مفردة فيسبقها a / an / one أو تأتى جمع دون إضافة a / an

– الأسماء التى تعد أما أن تنتهى بالنهايات القادمة أو تجمع جمع شاذ.

s – es – ies – ves – جمع شاذ

– كيف نكّون الجمع من الأسماء المفردة التى تعد:

١ – إما بإضافة s آخر الاسم: book → books

٢ – أو بإضافة es آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الموضحة ←:

s – x – ch – sh – ss – o

bus → buses	beach → beaches

٣– أو بإضافة ies إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (y) وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف (y).

– أما إذا سبق حرف (y) حرف متحرك لا يحذف.

y + حرف ساكن (candy) → ~~y~~ ies candies

y + حرف متحرك (boy) → ys (boys)

٤- أو بإضافة ves آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ f / fe حيث تحذف كما يلى:

knife → knives

٥- وهناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هى:

man → men	child → children

Uncountable nouns (U) ثانيًا : الأسماء التى لا تعد

- الأسماء التى لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد ومن أمثلتها كل المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة مثل:

water / sugar / milk / chocolate / grass / oil / honey / soup / bread / money / homework / time / traffic / juice

How much? كم للكمية...؟	How many? كم للعدد...؟
- للسؤال عن الاسماء التى لا تعد: - How much sugar do you have? - I have a little sugar. - لا يمكن الرد على سؤال How much: إلا بكمية تقريبية تسبقها: (some / a little / a lot)	- للسؤال عن الاسماء التى تعد: - How many oranges do you need? - I need two oranges. - I need a few oranges. - يمكن الرد على سؤال How many: برقم أو كمية تقريبية يسبقها (some / a few / a lot)
any أى	**some** بعض
- تأتى مع الجملة المنفية والسؤال وقبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد: - There aren't any lemons. - Is there any milkshake?	- تأتى مع الجملة المثبتة وقبل اسم جمع أو اسم لايعد: - There are some boys in the park.
A few قليل من	**A little** قليل من
- تأتى أمام الاسماء التى تعد (الجمع) فقط: - There are a few people in the street.	- تأتى أمام الاسماء التى لا تعد فقط: - There is a little tea in the kitchen.

A lot of كثيرًا من

- تأتى أمام الاسماء التى تعد (الجمع) والاسماء التى لا تعد:

- There are a lot of books in my room.
- I like eating a lot of honey.



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to paragraphs / emails

Lesson 1

Making candles at home

1. We can make candles at home. First, we need some wax. We need some perfume oil. We need one glass and a wick for each candle. We need some popsicle sticks, too. We use them to hold the wicks up.

Lesson 3

Personal care in Ancient Egypt

2. The Ancient Egyptians used products for personal care. They loved strong perfumes. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers. Others were made from herbs. They used toothbrushes to clean their teeth. They are different from ours today.

Lessons 4&5

Making salt dough

3. Most children like making salt dough. They need water, flour and salt. They stir the mixture to form a ball. Then, they cut out the dough into shapes, numbers or letters. After that, they put the finished items on a baking tray in the oven for three hours until it is hard.

Al Azhar test

Herbs and spices

4. Herbs and spices are important in our life. Salt and pepper are kinds of spices we use to cook food. We can drink herbs like mint and rosemary because they are healthy for our bodies. Herbs and spices were famous in Ancient Egypt, too. The Ancient Egyptians used them in making perfumes.

Activity - Unit 6

Egyptian spices

5. Egypt is famous for its spices. The Egyptians use them in cooking. Restaurants use them, too. They don't only use spices to cook food. They also use them in perfume, medicine, and color cloth. Spices are sold in stores, on the streets, and in the souks.

Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

a little - much - do - too - food

A : Do you like coffee with milk?

B : Yes, I ① ....

A : How ② .... milk do you want in your coffee?

B : Just ③ .... milk.

A : What's your favorite ④ .... ?

B : I like koshari.

A : I like it, ⑤ ....

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	press	stir	cotton	heat	----
2	salt	sugar	flour	festival	----
3	wheat	lentils	probably	dates	----
4	soap	shampoo	queen	toothpaste	----
5	lemon	melon	pen	orange	----

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية: الشرقية (2023)

Egypt is country in North Africa. Most of Egypt is desert. Egypt has the longest river in the world, The Nile. Tourists come to visit Egypt from all over the world. They come to enjoy their sunny weather. They go to Luxor and Aswan to see the great monuments. They can also visit the Pyramids and Sphinx in Giza. They can take a lot of photos of the Pyramids. Hurghada is a famous town for tourists. They can do many activities there. They can swim and go diving in the sea. They can relax on the beach.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What can tourists do in Hurghada?

....

2. Why do tourists go to Aswan and Luxor?

----

3. What's the famous town for tourists?

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. Egypt is a country in .... Africa. (North - East - West)

5. Egypt has the longest............ in the world. (river - sea - lake)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. How .... lemons do we need for the lemonade?

a much b many c long d tall

2. We need some perfume ....

a water b gas c oil d wood

3. There isn't .... honey left in the jar.

a some b any c a lot d lot

4. To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of ....

a toothbrush b hairbrush c shampoo d pen

5. How .... juice did you drink?

a many b long c much d far

6. We make .... from wheat.

a juice b meat c bread d fridge

7. My mom uses special .... to make her cooking taste good.

a planes b herbs c pens d bikes

8. The king put his .... on his head.

a crown b shirt c statue d mobile

9. The royal ring is .... It costs a lot of money.

a broken b precious c weak d cheap

10. .... has a very nice smell.

a Smoke b Water c Incense d Paper

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. some - We - wax - need.

----

2. soap - need - much - do - we - How?

----

3. Ancient - candies - The - made - mint - Egyptians.

----

4. have - I - a bath - need - to.

----

5. had - The king - a long - his - hand - scepter - in.

----

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Herbs and spices

important - pepper - drink - perfumes - mint



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. We use spices in our ....

a paper b food c wood d clothes

2. The spices give our food special ....

a flavors b wheat c sugar d favorite

3. Khan Al-Khalili is in ....

a France b Egypt c China d Japan

4. We can buy our .... in Khan Al-Khalili

a food b pots c spices d pens

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... are people who look after and clean buildings.

a Princes b Archeologists c Caretakers d Explorers

2. The king sits on his throne and holds his ______________ in his hand.

a palace b scepter c dust d steam

3. .... the lemons to make lemonade.

a Knock b Melt c Squeeze d Heat

4. We need some .... to make candles.

a wool b wood c water d wax

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

cool - stir - bowl - cooker - eat

We need a lot of ingredients to make soap. We need oil, flower petals and soap crystals. First, we put the ingredients for your soap in a ❶ ____________. Heat the ingredients on a ❷ ____________. Next, ❸ ____________ the ingredients with a wooden spoon and take them off the cooker. When the ingredients are hard and ❹ _________. Press them into a soap container.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص التالى واجب عن الأسئلة:

In the past, people in Ancient Egypt used personal care products for their cleanliness. Now, we use some of these products. For example, perfumes, cream, toothpaste and breath mints. But these products are different now. **They** are modern. We buy our toothbrushes from the pharmacy now, but in the past the toothbrush was a stick with small pieces of papyrus tied to it at one end.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is about ....

a personal care products b living in the past

c modern methods d making items

2. Modern is the opposite of ....

a new b old c boring d tiny

3. We buy our toothbrushes from the ....

a station b pharmacy c school d hospital

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to?

....

5. Where can people buy personal products now?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. homework - How - did - much - you - do?

....

2. bread - There - in - isn't - the - any - fridge.

....

3. on - of - the top - Press - the candle - the flowers.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. There isn't .... (some) honey in the jar.
2. I have .... (many) money. I can buy the toy car.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

we don't have any chocolate chip cookies

....

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Egyptian spices

Guiding questions

1- How do we use spices?
2- Where are spices sold?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

General Revision on Units 4, 5 & 6

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ٤ - ٥ - ٦

Revision on vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات

(Unit 4)



balloons
بالونات



streamers
أشرطة الزينة



birthday cake
تورتة عيد ميلاد



invitation
دعوة



playlist
قائمة تشغيل (أغانى)



fireworks
ألعاب نارية

(Unit 5)





ride a camel
يركب الجمل



travel by train
يسافر بالقطار



sail by ship
يبحر بالسفينة



go on a journey
يذهب في رحلة طويلة



go on a voyage
يذهب في رحلة بحرية



take a trip
يقوم برحلة قصيرة

(Unit 6)

perfume oil	wax	drop	wick
زيت عطري	مادة الشمع	قطرة	فتيل (الشمعة)

popsicle sticks	soap	shampoo	hairbrush
عصي الايس كريم	صابون	شامبو	فرشاة شعر

toothpaste	toothbrush	cream	perfume	breath mints
معجون أسنان	فرشاة أسنان	كريم	عطر	معطر الفم بالنعناع



Important verbs أفعال هامة





heat (ed)
يسخن



squeeze (d)
يعصر



press (ed)
يضغط

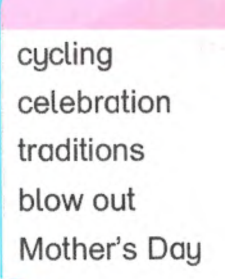


stir (red)
يقلب

Other words كلمات أخرى

(Unit 4)

cycling	ركوب الدراجات	breath	النفس
celebration	احتفال	costume	ملابس / زى
traditions	تقاليد	guest	ضيف
blow out	يطفئ (الشمع)	adult	راشد / بالغ
Mother's Day	عيد الأم		



(Unit 5)			
advanced	متقدم	inspiration	إلهام
sculptures	منحوتات	sway	يتأرجح
archaeologist	عالم آثار	wander	يتجول
caravan	قافلة	wasteland	الأرض القاحلة / البور
dromedaries	جمال(وحيدة السنام)	legend	قصة خرافية
fascinated	مَنبهر	port	ميناء
adventure	مغامرة	telescope	تليسكوب
exhausted	مرهق	felucca	قارب شراعى
(Unit 6)			
candle	شمعة	crown	تاج
ingredients	مكونات	instructions	تعليمات
paintings	لوحات / رسومات	curtains	ستائر
herbs and spices	أعشاب وتوابل	cinnamon	نبات القرفة
recipe	وصفة	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية
flavors	النكهات	mint tea	شاي بالنعناع
combination	مزيج/ توليفة	teapot	ابريق الشاي
astonished	مندهش	teaspoon	ملعقة شاى صغيرة
square candies	حلوى مربعة	tea leaves	أوراق نبات الشاى
caretaker	مقدم الرعاية	scepter	صو لجان (عصا الملك)
incense	بخور	throne	عرش

Adjectives صفات

dangerous	خطير	magical	سحري
empty	فارغ	peaceful	هادئ
lost	تائه	relaxing	مريح
mysterious	غامض	huge	ضخم
awesome	مذهل	incredible	لا يصدق
difficult	صعب	lovely	جميل
warm	دافئ	traditional	تقليدى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة				Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past ماضِ	Present	مضارع	Past ماضِ
(Unit 4)					
decorate	يزين	decorated	hang up	يعلق	hung up
organize	ينظم	organized	blow up	يملئ بالهواء	blew up
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	let	يترك / يدع	let

attend	يحضر	attended	leave	يترك / يغادر	left
confirm	يؤكد	confirmed	burn	يحترق	burnt
dress up	يتهندم	dressed up			
figure out	يستنتج	figured out			
(Unit 5)					
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	fly	يطير	flew
sail	يبحر	sailed	ride	يركب	rode
call after	يسمي باسم	called after	say	يقول	said
move	يتحرك	moved	lose	يتوه / يضل	lost
roll	يلف / يتدحرج	rolled	know	يعرف	knew
last	يدوم	lasted			
(Unit 6)					
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	smell	يشم / يصدر رائحة	smelt / smelled
knock	طرق / دق	knocked	hold up	يمسك/ لأعلى	held up
rub	يدلك / يفرك	rubbed	read out	يقرأ بصوت عال	read out
			lean	يستند على	leant / leaned

Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد

1 The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

فاعل	إثبات	نفى	استفهام
I	am + v-ing	am not + v-ing	(كلمة إستفهام) + Am + فاعل + v-ing?
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	is + v-ing	is not + v-ing	(كلمة إستفهام) + Is + فاعل + v-ing?
We / You / They / اسم جمع	are + v-ing	are not + v-ing	(كلمة إستفهام) + Are + فاعل + v-ing?

Keywords كلمات دالة Look! - Listen! - now - at the moment - at present

Usage استخدام ١- يستخدم لوصف صورة. ٢- يعبر عن فعل يحدث الآن.

Ex. 1. Noha and Laila are cleaning their room.
2. Adel is not talking on the phone.
3. What are Emad and Nabil doing?
4. Is Reem watching TV? - Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.

2 The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

إثبات	نفى	استفهام
فاعل + فعل فى التصريف الثاني	فاعل + didn't + inf.	(كلمة إستفهام) Did + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords كلمات دالة yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past - once - in 2015

Usage استخدام يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى وقت محدد فى الماضى

Ex. 1. She cooked fish yesterday.
2. She didn't cook meat yesterday.
3. Did she cook rice yesterday?
- Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.

3 Countable & Uncountable nouns

A Countable nouns (C) أولا : الأسماء التى يمكن عدها

- الأسماء التى تعد إما أن تأتى مفردة فيسبقها a / an / one أو تأتى جمع دون إضافة a / an
- الأسماء التى تعد أما أن تنتهى بـ s / es / ies / ves أو تجمع جمع شاذ مثل:

man	→	men	child	→	children

B Uncountable nouns (U) ثانيًا : الأسماء التى لا تعد

- الأسماء التى لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد ومن أمثلتها كل المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة مثل:

water / sugar / milk / chocolate / grass / oil / honey / soup / bread / money / homework / time / traffic / juice

How much? كم للكمية...؟	How many? كم للعدد...؟
- للسؤال عن الاسماء التى لا تعد: - How much sugar do you have? - I have a little sugar. - لا يمكن الرد على سؤال How much: إلا بكمية تقريبية تسبقها: (some / a little / a lot)	- للسؤال عن الاسماء التى تعد: - How many oranges do you need? - I need two oranges. - I need a few oranges. - يمكن الرد على سؤال How many: برقم أو كمية تقريبية يسبقها (some / a few / a lot)
any أى - تأتى مع الجملة المنفية والسؤال وقبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد: - There aren't any lemons. - Is there any milkshake?	**some** بعض - تأتى مع الجملة المثبتة وقبل اسم جمع أو اسم لايعد: - There are some boys in the park.
A few قليل من - تأتى أمام الاسماء التى تعد (الجمع) فقط: - There are a few people in the street.	**A little** قليل من - تأتى أمام الاسماء التى لا تعد فقط: - There is a little tea in the kitchen.

A lot of كثيرا من

- تأتى أمام الاسماء التى تعد (الجمع) والاسماء التى لا تعد:
- There are a lot of books in my room.
- I like eating a lot of honey.

General Test - Units (4 - 5- 6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Sama likes ....

a math   b music   c Arabic   d English

2. Today is her .... birthday.

a friend's   b sister's   c brother's   d father's

3. Sama is going to make a new ....

a book   b playlist   c candle   d pen

4. Sama and her .... like to listen to music.

a cousins   b friends   c students   d family

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers usually have many farming ....

a stones   b tools   c nuts   d sculptures

2. We let off .... on my birthday. It was amazing.

a invitations   b streamers   c balloons   d fireworks

3. Each candle has one................................ .

a button   b wick   c hand   d drop

4. A king always sits on a ....

a scepter   b desk   c castle   d throne

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

decorated - fireworks - amazing - invitations - dark

Yesterday was my cousin's birthday party. The party was ❶ ------------- and my cousin was very happy. We all helped my uncle. My mother ❷ ------------- the birthday cake. I sent the ❸ ------------- . My dad let off the ❹ ------------- .My brother helped my uncle blow up the balloons.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ihab. I like sailing across the Nile. My friends and I usually go on a felucca across the Nile. We don't sail the felucca by ourselves. It's not easy to sail. There is always someone to sail it for us. The felucca has a big white sail which moves slowly in the wind. It's very enjoyable. The trip is always amazing. We enjoy the sunny weather. The best place to go on a felucca is in Aswan.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. They usually sail across the Nile in.............................. weather.
   a messy b sunny c rainy d cloudy
2. The felucca sail moves .... in the wind.
   a carelessly b strongly c quickly d slowly
3. The felucca has a big ....
   a wood b sail c pen d paper

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What does Ihab like to do?

   ----

5. What's the best place to go on a felucca?

   ----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. a little - is - A wick - cotton rope - the candle - inside.

   ----

2. the - Are - invitations - you - by email - sending?

   ----

3. perfumes - Egyptians - loved - Ancient - strong - the.

   ----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She .... (plays) football yesterday.
2. There isn't .... (some) sugar in the bag.

7 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

It isn t cold today

---

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Personal care in Ancient Egypt

Guiding phrases

perfume - toothpaste

Listening Material



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع الواردة فى الوحدات والاختبارات



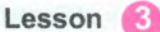
Unit 1



Lesson 1

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

I visit my grandpa every summer. He lives in the country and he has a big farm. He plants potatoes, peppers, onions and lettuce on his farm. I usually help him to harvest these crops.




Lesson 3

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

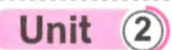
I live in a big city. There are many places to visit. There are lots of different restaurants and the food is tasty. There is a big park. I go to the park every Friday and play football with my friends. We read and borrow books at the library. We go shopping at the shopping center. I love my city.



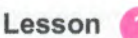
Test Unit 1

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Hala lives with her family in an apartment in the city. She has two sisters. They go shopping in the city center. Hala doesn't like going to the park. On Friday, she stays at home and helps her mum.



Unit 2




Lesson 1

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Adel is a new student at El Salam Primary school. Adel's friend is Hatem. Hatem is very clever. He is good at math. Hatem shows Adel where his classroom is. Hatem stays with him at break. Hatem is very friendly.

Lesson 2

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Omar is a student in primary 6. He likes his school very much. Omar is clever. He likes math. Omar likes to play football in the playground. Omar doesn't like to play basketball.



Lesson 3

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Amr is a polite boy. He likes vegetables. Amr eats carrots. He likes fruit, too. He likes bananas very much. His father has a dog. Amr is scared of dogs.



Lessons 4 - 5

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Fatma likes pets. She has a pet dog. The dog has sharp claws and teeth. Fatma takes the dog for a walk every day. The dog is calm and quiet.



Test Unit 2

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Basel is in primary 6. Basel has a friend called Hazem. Basel likes his teachers very much. Basel likes Arabic, too. Miss Hanan is the teacher of Arabic. Basel likes Miss Hanan. She is kind to him.

Unit 3




Lesson 1

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Last vacation my friend Sherif went to Cairo. He's from Luxor. In Cairo he visited many places. First, he went to the Egyptian Museum and took photos with his camera. After that, he went on a boat and saw the Nile. It was an amazing vacation.



Lesson 3

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Hisham and his friend Amged went to see the Pyramids in Giza. They went by taxi. At the Pyramids they saw great views. Amged walked in the desert and he wanted to climb mountains, but Hisham was afraid of heights. But he decided to face his fear. At first, Hisham's face was white, but his friend took his hand and climbed together.



Test Unit 3

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

We like vacations. We should plan to go to good places. We can choose the cheapest and quietest place to spend our holiday. We should think how to get to this place and the suitable time for us.

Review 1



General Test on Units 1, 2 & 3



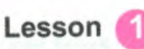
- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Nabil went to a new school last week. He found out that each friend had a different personality. Essam is calm. Sherif is polite and shy. Ahmed is very clever. He's good at math. He helps his friends with their homework.

Unit 4



Lesson 1



- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Today is Adel's birthday. Adel is twelve years old. Adel invites his friends to the party. Adel's mother makes him a big cake. Adel's mother decorates the cake. Adel has twelve candles on the cake.

Lesson 3

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

I'm Hossam. Last week was my friend's birthday. He had a big party and invited all his friends. I went there too. There was a big cake. My friend blew out the candles with one breath.

Test Unit 4



- Listen and circle the correct answer:

In China, people eat noodles on their birthday. The noodles are very long to represent a long life for the person. It's a tradition there.

Unit 5

Lesson 3

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Marco Polo went to many places he didn't know. He went to the Gobi Desert for the first time in 1275. He was amazed and fascinated by the sand dunes. The wind made the sand dunes move and roll like huge yellow waves. The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the dunes.

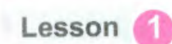
Test Unit 5



- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Mrs. Esraa is a teacher of English. She has two children, Moamen and Toka. She likes traveling to different places with her family on vacation. Last summer, she went to Giza and visited the Pyramids and the Sphinx. She also went to Cairo and visited the Egyptian Museum.

Unit 6



Lesson 1

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Candles are very important. We use them everywhere to get light. Others use them to decorate their homes. Some people use candles on special occasions, like birthday parties.

Test Unit 6

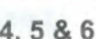


- Listen and circle the correct answer:

We like putting spices in our food. The spices give our food special flavors. Khan Al-Khalili is an area in Egypt. It's famous for selling all different kinds of spices. People from all the country go there to buy spices.

Review 2

Test on Units 4, 5 & 6





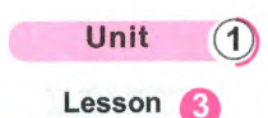
- Listen and circle the correct answer:

My name is Sama. I like music. Today is my best friend's birthday. I'm going to make a new playlist on my phone. We love to listen to music.

Listening Materials on Pronunciation



نصوص الاستماع الخاص بدورس الصوتيات داخل الوحدات



Unit 1

Lesson 3

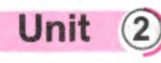
1- Listen and circle the word you hear:

1. sick 2. throw 3. path 4. mouse 5. sing

2- Listen and complete the words with (s) or (th):

1. see 2. thirsty 3. stalk 4. thanks

5. bath 6. bus 7. soft 8. selfish 9. through



Unit 2

Lesson 3

4- Listen and circle the word you hear:

1. hat 2. bug 3. stuck 4. ankle

Unit 3

Lesson 3

2- Listen and circle the word you hear:

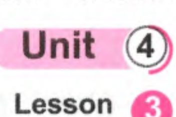
1. wet 2. whale 3. west

3- Listen. Complete the words with (v) or (w):

1. walk 2. van 3. web

4. visit 5. warm 6. vase

7. water 8. window 9. volcano



Unit 4

Lesson 3

3- Listen and circle the word that you hear:

1. Is this the main paragraph in the text?

2. I think the tools are in the shed.

3. I want to sail a boat!

4. Gameela said that she's excited about her holiday.

5. Hani has a pain in his foot.





PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT



الصف السادس الإبتدائي

الفصل الدراسي الأول

ملحق
تسميع المفردات
والواجب المنزلي

2025

6th

PRIMARY SIX
FIRST TERM

دار غزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Unit 1 Green cities

Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

تمر - بلح	منظمة/مؤسسة ....
عمارة سكنية	نوع - فصيلة ....
مواد كيميائية	الطبيعة ....
سماد طبيعى	بشكل طبيعى ....
يحصد	الحياة البرية ....
سقف منزل - سطح	اجنبى ....
حديقة اجتماعية	مشروع ....
متطوع	بيانات ....
حى سكنى	كائنات حية ....
طازج	خاص - مميز ....
بلكونة	مسابقة - منافسة ....
وجبة خفيفة	

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يجمع	....	يزرع ....
....	يقدم/يعرض	....	ينتج ....
....	يفهم	....	ينمو/يزرع ....
....	يصبح	....	يبيع ....
....	يقود		

Activities lessons 1&2



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبر الخيمة (2023)

festival - block - Fridays - cleaning - local

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house tomorrow but Mariam goes to help her aunt on ❶ .... They work in a community garden on the roof of an apartment ❷ .... They grow vegetables and fruit for people in the ❸ .... area. Mariam thinks that the community garden is a good idea for ❹ .... the air in the city.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. sells - **My uncle** - in - vegetables - market - the.

   ....

2. fertilizer - **Natural** - good - is - for - food - growing. الاسكندرية - إدارة شرق (2023)

   ....

3. areas - **Green** - the people - affect - wildlife - and.

   ....

4. flowers - plant - **I** - the roof - on. دمياط - إدارة كفر سعد (2023)

   ....

5. never - **We** - foreign - grow - plants. الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2023)

   ....

6. often - **How** - it - does - rain? القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة (2023)

   ....

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. How .... (always) do you eat snacks?
2. I .... (visits) my uncle on Fridays. قنا - إدارة الوقف (2023)
3. We .... (eat never) unhealthy food. الاسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك (2023)
4. He often .... (see) his aunt on Fridays. المنوفية (2023)

  Lessons 3, 4 & 5



Vocabulary

مقابلة	اسكتلندى ....
مسافة	خط سكة حديد ....
تقليد	طابق/دور ....
منظر رائع	مشهور ....
مميز - خاص	يفتقد شخص ....
عسل	أنانى ....
نوع - فصيلة	لين/ناعم ....
عصيدة	فارغ ....
دافئ	ثقب/فتحة ....
غير رسمى	صامت ....
سهم	ضئيل/صغير جدا ....
فى النهاية	السكان المحليون ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
ينشئ	....	يشعر	....
يقرر	....	يسقط	....
يمر	....	يخبر	....
يشارك	....	يجرى	....
يغطى	....	يفكر	....
يضحك	....	يتسكع	....

Activities lessons 3,4 & 5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The .... line is a road for trains. المنوفية - إدارة الشهداء (2023)

a fishing b trade c railway d plants

2. The .... residents are people who live in a neighborhood.

a local b sad c old d young

3. When I go on holidays, I .... my friends. البحيرة (2023)

a hate b miss c taste d pass

4. The .... from the window is very nice. I love nature.

a review b view c wall d bowl

5. I live on the .... floor of a big apartment block. الاسكندرية (2023)

a three b third c bird d street

6. We use natural chemicals in .... food. المنوفية (2023)

a bad b cold c organic d ugly

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. centre - is - in - the - Our - city - apartment.

----

2. a great - We - have - the tree - over - view.

----

3. Scottish - is - OK - food.

----

4. I - my - miss - favorite - Egyptian - food.

----

5. friends - I - have - a lot - of - school - at.

----

6. things - What - do - miss - you - your country - about?

Unit 2 We are all different

Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

متوتر	صالة ألعاب ....
هادئ	حجرة الدراسة ....
خجول	فخور ....
مؤدب	كرة القدم الخماسية ....
منظم	موقع على الانترنت ....
لطيف -جميل	كمبيوتر لوحى ....
ماهر - شاطر	مسلسل تليفزيونى ....
فوضوي	كمبيوتر محمول ....
عطوف	صيدلية ....
ودود	دواء ....
متعاون	معمل ....
مضحك	سفينة فضاء ....
حريص	نادى رياضى ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يذاكر / يدرس	....	يقضى وقت	....
يستلف/يستعير	....	يختبئ	....
يكرر	....	يحدث	....

Activities lessons 1&2



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: القاهرة - إدارة الوايلى (2023)

who - family - because - popular - Earth

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series. It's ❶ _____________ with people of all age groups. It's interesting ❷ _____________ it takes place in the future of a planet called Wanda. This is a world where humans live because the ❸ _____________ is now too hot. The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to return the Earth to look for his ❹ _____________ .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The classroom isn't messy. It's .... الفيوم (2023)

   a messy b tidy c happy d nervous

2. Yara is good at math, she is .... الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا (2023)

   a shy b nervous c clever d worried

3. The .... is the place where we do experiments. المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2023)

   a bathroom b laboratory c garden d library

4. Aya is always .... She is worried about talking to people.

   a friendly b messy c shy d clever

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. This is the math question _____________ (who) I don't understand.
2. The classroom _____________ (when) we learn is clean. المنيا - إدارة ملوى (2023)
3. The TV series was very _____________ (bore). I didn't like it.
4. Yesterday's math lesson was very _____________ (interest).



Lessons 3, 4 & 5



Vocabulary

فأر	مخالب ....
فئران	حيوان اليف ....
غابة	فراء ....
حشائش	رفاهية/سعادة ....
معدة	ودود ....
يخرج مسرعًا	تمشيه ....
ضوضاء	طعام ....
خائف	أرنب برى ....
مندهش	قرد ....
سحلية	فيل ....

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يخبر	....	يتذكر ....
....	يهرب	....	يتحرك ....
....	يُدلل	....	يبكى ....
....	يلمس	....	يضحك ....
....	يحتفظ ب/يربى	....	يرقد ....
....	يعتقد	....	يتحدث ....
....	يأخذ	....	يدخل ....

Adjectives صفات

مستقل/يعتمد على نفسه	هادئ ....
ناعم/لين	نظيف ....
جميل	إيجابى ....
حاد	سلبى ....

Activities lessons 3,4 & 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

teeth - independent - animals - friendly - plants

Cats are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm ❶ .... They are usually ❷ .... They like people but they are ❸ .... Cats have sharp claws and ❹ ...., but they only use them when they are scared.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Cats are my best .... (المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2023))
   - a books
   - b fruits
   - c pets
   - d vegetables
2. I'm very .... I want some food. (البحيرة - إدارة دمنهور (2023))
   - a angry
   - b hungry
   - c worried
   - d nervous
3. Cats have soft .... which is nice to touch.
   - a claws
   - b teeth
   - c paws
   - d fur
4. My mother doesn't need any help. She is ....
   - a unkind
   - b independent
   - c tall
   - d nervous

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. a bit - shy - I - feel - nervous - and. (الاسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك (2023))

   ....

2. Cats - fur - soft - beautiful - with - are. (المنيا - إدارة العدوة (2023))

   ....

3. likes - She - to - lie - all - bed - day - in her. (أسيوط - إدارة البداري (2023))

   ....

4. hears - Hare - a noise - inside - house - her. (الأقصر - إدارة الأقصر (2023))

   ....

October Test 1 on Units (1)&(2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (2023) كفر الشيخ - إدارة قلين

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. .... are my favorite animals.

a Bats b Cats c Hats d Mats

2. Cats are beautiful with .... fur.

a soft b good c bad d hard

3. They are clean and .... animals.

a tired b thirsty c happy d calm

4. Cats have sharp claws and ....

a teeth b hands c legs d fingers

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hany is very .... He shows respect to everyone. (2023) كفر الشيخ - إدارة قلين

a polite b shy c nervous d messy

2. Mini Forest .... help to look after the trees. (2023) الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا

a doctors b volunteers c teachers d tourists

3. We play basketball in .... lessons. (2023) سوهاج - إدارة طما

a Math b science

c IT d physical education

4. We grow .... food with no chemicals. (2023) المنيا

a black b organic c bad d fast

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: كفر الشيخ - إدارة فوة (2023)

grow - plants - roof - sell - tomorrow

Amr asks Adel to go to his house ❶ ____________, but Adel goes to help his uncle on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the ❷ ____________ of an apartment block. They ❸ ____________ vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they ❹ ____________ them, too. Adel thinks the community garden is a good idea.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: المنوفية - إدارة السادات (2023)

My name is Hany. I help new students get to know the school and their classrooms. I take them around and I stay with them at the break. I helped a new student yesterday. His name is Ali. He was very nervous and shy. I shared my book with him and I gave him extra copies of the worksheets. I love helping my friends. Next Friday, we will go to Cairo together and visit the Pyramids there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about ____________ .

   a helping new students b playing football
   c studying d teachers at school

2. Ali was shy and ____________.

   a happy b nervous c strong d organized

3. Hany is ____________ .

   a helpful b frightened c messy d nervous

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What did Hany share with Ali?

   ____

5. What will they visit in Cairo?

   ____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. was - tired - I - last - really - night. الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا (2023)

---

2. lemons - This - we - dates - have - and - year. سوهاج - إدارة طما (2023)

---

3. watch - How - TV - you - do - often? الفيوم - إدارة طامية (2023)

---

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Dalia is the girl............ (where) sits next to me. الفيوم - إدارة طامية (2023)
2. Tomatoes, peppers and onions .... (is) vegetables. أسوان - إدارة أسوان (2023)

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

are you angry

---

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your school

Guiding phrases

play sports - study science

October Test 2 on Units (1)&(2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة | المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2023)

1. Asmaa and Hoda are ....

a sisters b friends c students d plants

2. Hoda goes to help her ....

a uncle b aunt c father d mother

3. They work in a ....

a park b station

c school d community garden

4. The community garden is on the ....

a city b park c roof d floor

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... food doesn't have any chemicals.

a Fast b organic c Bad d Ugly

2. My friend is tidy, he is ....

a nervous b organized c messy d shy

3. I have a nice cat at home, it's the best ....

a bat b pet c ball d bike

4. Many farmers .... the vegetables when they grow.

a destroy b play c harvest d draw

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: بني سويف - إدارة سمسطا (2023)

side - view - floor - food - apartment

I live with my family. We live in a big ❶ ________ . It is on the third ❷ _________ . There is a big park on the other ❸ ________ of the street. We have a great ❹ _________ from the balcony. We have green spaces in our neighborhood. We usually go and play with our friends there.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ahmed. I live in the countryside on a farm It's near a town called Asyut. My village is near the River Nile. My father grows organic food. **He** doesn't put any chemicals to the vegetables and fruits.

My mother is a housewife. She helps my father in the field. She always cooks good food. My sister Nada helps my mother cook a lot of food. I love my family very much. We always visit our relatives on weekends.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**He**" refers to _____________ .

   a Ahmed   b Father   c mother   d Nada

2. Ahmed lives in the _____________.

   a town   b city   c countryside   d moon

3. The village is near the _____________ .

   a station   b River Nile   c mall   d sea

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What does the father grow?

   ____

5. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

   ____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. plants - grow - **We** - never - foreign.

----

2. shows - everyone - **She** - to - respect.

----

3. science - **Where** - do - you - study?

----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Is this the book .... (who) you bought?
2. My friend .... (eats always) organic food.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how does Mini Forest help people ---

8 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements about A community garden:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your name is Hussein and your email address is Hussein 22@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is Tamer@yahoo.com.

Guiding phrases

apartment block - on the roof

New Message

To .... **Cc** **Bcc**

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 3 Vacation plans

Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

يلتقط صور	تخفيض ....
أجازة	مرشد ....
غروب الشمس	مغامرة ....
يركب دراجات رباعية	يبحث عن كلمة ....
قصر	كارت ائتمان ....
مئذنة	جولة سياحية ....
سوق	محفظة ....
متحمس	يحجز ....
قطار الملاهي	نصائح ....
يتسلق	مجانى ....
موقع الكترونى	تراب - غبار ....
يقرر	خوذة ....

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يحتفل	....	يزور ....
....	يأتى	....	يصل ....
....	يدفع (مالا)	....	يستكشف ....
....	يتكلف	....	يسخن ....
....	يسجل/يدون	....	يركز ....
....	يقابل	....	يدوم/يستمر ....

Activities lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. There many rides to try in the .... البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة (2023)

a station b theme park c museum d souks

2. I like to .... new things and places so I travel a lot and search for things. بنى سويف - إدارة بنى سويف (2023)

a eat b explore c take d play

3. If you eat a .... meal at lunchtime. You can work better.

a bad b ugly c healthy d unhealthy

4. You need your credit card to .... for the shopping.

a relax b see c pay d eat

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. We have math lessons _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ (at) Thursday.
2. If you mix yellow and green, you _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ (got) blue.
3. I go to Luxor _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ (on) winter. الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2023)
4. He always goes to school _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ (in) Sunday mornings.
5. My school was built _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ (at) 2010.
6. If you heat sugar, it _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ (melt). قنا - إدارة قوص (2023)

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. meet - us - will - Where - the guide?

_ _

2. excited - I'm - about - vacation - my. القاهرة - إدارة الوايلى (2023)

_ _

3. about - Study - 30 - for - minutes. القليوبية - إدارة القناطر الخيرية (2023)

_ _

Lessons  

3 , 4 & 5



Vocabulary

وصف	جولات ....
مرتفعات	يبتل ....
خوف	مدينة ملاهي ....
بحيرة	محاكاة ....
نهر صغير - جدول	شجاع ....
قبة	محيط ....
بركة مياه	احتفال - مهرجان ....
غزال	مسرح ....
سر	وجهة الوصول ....
نقي	شاشة ....
قبة	شلال ....
خائف من	متعة ....
جذاب	حول ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحبط	....	يسترخي/يستريح	....
يرفع	....	يشرب	....
يتلألأ	....	يبين/يظهر	....
يصل إلى	....	يعوم	....
يواجه	....	يتكلف	....
يتنفس	....	يشاهد	....
يخمن	....		

Activities lessons 3,4 & 5



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: المنيا (2023)

eats - photo - Dome - excited - places

Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It's Amal's first time in Aswan. She is very ❶ .... She wants to see all famous ❷ .... Amal shows Fatima a ❸ .... and tells her that they can visit the ❹ .... of Abu Al Hawa and they can also climb up the hill to it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. How much does this pen ....? الاسكندرية (2023)

   a past b lost c cost d catch

2. We went to Aswan last year. It was our .... البحيرة (2023)

   a pollution b destination c population d simulation

3. She decides to .... her fear. المنوفية (2023)

   a ear b face c nose d eye

4. Let's go to the beach to .... أسيوط (2023)

   a travel b damage c relax d bake

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. can - How - climb - the hill - up - you? المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا (2023)

   ....

2. is - afraid - She - heights - of. قنا - إدارة الوقف (2023)

   ....

3. wants - happy - to - She - make - her family. سوهاج (2023)

   ....

4. park - There's - near - a big - river - the.

   ....

Unit 4 Celebrate good times!

Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

خطاب	ركوب الدراجات ....
داخل المنزل	حفلة ....
ألعاب نارية	قارئ ....
أشرطة الزينة	ينظم ....
الشموع	اختبار ....
قائمة تشغيل	وقت فراغ ....
ساحة - فناء	تاريخ ....
دعوة	يؤدى تمرينات رياضية ....
نَفَس	مراجعة ....
بالونات	مهم - هام ....
شخص بالغ	أخبار ....
خيط	قريبًا ....
مقص	فيلم وثائقى ....
طقس	

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يرسل	....	يمرر ....
....	يطلق	....	يربط ....
....	يقضى (وقت)	....	يزين ....
....	يرتدى	....	يرمز إلى ....
....	يقرأ	....	يحتفل ....
....	يبين / يوضح	....	يعلق ....
....	يدرس	....	يملىء بالهواء ....

Activities lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We use .... to cut paper. القليوبية - إدارة كفر شكر (2023)

   a strings b pens c scissors d pencils

2. I write a/an .... to ask my friends to come to my birthday party.

   a book b invitation c invention d play

3. He plays with his friends in the .... of the school.

   a yard b laboratory c station d bedroom

4. I like history. I watch .... films. المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2023)

   a animal b documentary c funny d sports

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. community - **We're** - from - inviting - people - the local.

   -

2. party - **He** - is - a - organizing. الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم (2023)

   -

3. coming - many - people - **How** - are?

   -

4. forget - invite - **Don't** - to - friends - your. السويس - إدارة الأربعين (2023)

   -

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. Where _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ (is) your friends traveling this week? الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم (2023)
2. She is studying for the exam _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ (last) week.
3. Mai and Hala are _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ (have) lunch now. الاسكندرية - إدارة شرق (2023)
4. What _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ (am) you doing?



Lessons 3 , 4 & 5



Vocabulary

خوخ	يتنكر ....
ضيف	شخصية ....
تقليد	عنوان ....
هدية	زى خاص ....
عادى - معتاد	عيد الأم ....
شخص بالغ	مهذب ....
فى كل مكان	لغة رسمية ....
مختلف	رد ....
احتفال	جائزة ....
وجبه خفيفة	تفاصيل ....
لهب	الهجاء - التهجى ....

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يحضر	....	يحتفل ....
....	يؤكد	....	يشمل ....
....	يستنتج	....	يدعو ....
....	يتحدث	....	يغادر/يترك ....
....	يكتب	....	يصبح ....
....	يعرف	....	يحترق ....
....	يترك/يدع	....	يُطفىء ....
		....	يستلم ....

Activities lessons 3,4 & 5



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

house - presents - friends - candles - birthday

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. We make ❶ ____________ cakes for our children. We put ❷ ____________ on them to show their age. We often have parties with our family and ❸ ____________. The children usually get ❹ ____________, too.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. "..............................." is the air that comes out of your mouth.

   a View b Scene c Sound d Breath

2. I hope all the guests can .... the party. الوادى الجديد - إدارة الخارجة (2023)

   a miss b attend c ask d eat

3. My school celebrates Mother's Day .... every year.

   a population b celebration c location d invention

4. I'm .... up the streamers. المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم (2023)

   a hanging b blowing c cutting d feeding

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. hope - you - can - I - attend. المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا (2023)

   ----

2. are - We - organizing - party - a special. كفر الشيخ - إدارة الحامول (2023)

   ----

3. gets - peace of - Who - first - the - the cake?

November Test 1 on Units (3)&(4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. .... is my birthday.

a Friday　b Tomorrow　c Yesterday　d Today

2. I'm with my .... at the carnival.

a friends　b cousins　c family　d sisters

3. There are places to .... and stores to buy, too.

a swim　b eat　c dance　d sing

4. There are amazing rides like the ....

a rollercoaster　b waterfalls　c carnival　d Orient Train

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can ask Ahmed to .... a playlist. الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم (2023)

a send　b make　c hang　d blow

2. There are enough chairs for all the .... at the party. المنوفية - إدارة السادات (2023)

a guests　b meals　c traditions　d presents

3. There are amazing .... to try like the rollercoaster. البحيرة - إدارة النوبارية (2023)

a groups　b rides　c fights　d tickets

4. Let's go quad .... in the desert. الفيوم - إدارة طامية (2023)

a fishing　b swimming　c biking　d playing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

rollercoaster - try - excited - photos - biking

Hisham and Salah are planning for their vacation this week. They are very ❶ ---------- They will take their mum with them. Salah suggested to ❷ ------------- new places like Cairo where there are lots to see. Hisham wants to see the Manial Place Museum to take ❸ ------------- for his school project. Salah wants to go to the theme park and ride a ❹ ------------- .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: السويس - إدارة الأربعين (2023)

I'm Mazen. Today is my birthday and guess where am I? I'm with my family for my **special** birthday surprise at the carnival! When we arrive at the park, we are suddenly in a world of fantasy and fairy tales; it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster if you are brave, and theaters where you can watch shows and concerts. There are places to eat and stores to buy, too. What a great birthday present- thanks Mom and Dad!.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where is Mazen? - At the ------------- .

a cinema   b museum   c carnival   d zoo

2. The underlined word "**special**" means -------------.

a normal   b unusual   c difficult   d easy

3. If you are------------- , you can try the rollercoaster.

a sad   b bored   c angry   d brave

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why is the carnival is an interesting place?

----

5. Does Mazen like his parent's present?

----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. are - and - Heba - What - doing - Hana? بنى سويف - إدارة بنى سويف (2023)

---

2. blow - Can - balloons - up - you - some?

---

3. about - I'm - vacation - my - excited. الاسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك (2023)

---

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He was born .... (at) June. المنوفية - إدارة بركة السبع (2023)

2. She is .... (study) for the exam this week. دمياط - إدارة كفر سعد (2023)

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

you look very tired

---

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

The places you are going to visit

Guiding phrases

interesting and busy - amazing things to do

November Test 2 on Units (3)&(4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة : الجيزة - إدارة منشأة القناطر (2023)

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. The guide will meet them in the hotel at ....

a 9 am b 9 pm c 10 am d 10 pm

2. They will be in a group of ....

a five b six c seven d eight

3. They will ride the quad bike for ....

a a day b a week c an hour d half an hour

4. They have to wear ....

a shoes b helmets c glasses d shorts

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة.

1. My friends are .... the streamers for the party. الغربية (2023)

a blowing up b hanging up c letting off d knocking on

2. I play football in the ....

a bathroom b station c yard d hospital

3. Let's .... The Bab Zuweila minaret.

a jump b climb c arrive d plan

4. I made a/an .... of the best 30 songs nowadays.

a cake b firework c playlist d invitation

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

balloons - scissors - busy - hanging - blowing

Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my brother's birthday. We are all happy and ❶ ...., too. I'm ❷ .... up the streamers for my brother's party. I use the ❸ .... to cut the string. My sister is blowing up some ❹ ....
They are bright and colorful.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hassan and Hatem are planning for their vacation this week. They are very excited. They will take their mum with them. Hatem suggested to try new places like Cairo where there are lots to see. Hassan wants to see Manial palace museum to take photos for his school project. He thinks that museums are very **interesting** places. Hatem wants to go to the theme park and ride a rollercoaster. Also they are going to visit other places outside Cairo like going quad biking in the desert in Giza. If they take the bus, they will arrive in a bout 30 minutes. Exploring new places is a very good idea.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "**interesting**" is the opposite of ....

a exciting b boring c tiring d amazing

2. They want to ride on a .... in the park.

a rollercoaster b camel c horse d bus

3. Hassan and Hatem are ....

a guests b friends c teachers d brothers

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why does Hassan want to visit the Manial palace museum?

....

5. How can you explore new places?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. are - There - a lot of - at the - rides - carnival. القاهرة (2023)

---

2. had - I - such - a - experience - wonderful. الاسكندرية (2023)

---

3. make - going to - Dalia - is - playlist - a. البحيرة (2023)

---

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My brothers play football .... (in) six o'clock. الفيوم (2023)
2. Are they .... (watch) a funny movie?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

they re playing with the balloons.

---

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your free time

Guiding phrases

go running
doing sports

Unit 5 Amazing journeys

Lessons 1 & 2



Vocabulary

مستكشف	صلصال ....
رحلات - سفريات	عالم آثار ....
قرن (١٠٠ عام)	متقدم ....
رحلة قصيرة	زراعة ....
مغامرة	لغز/سر غامض ....
مفكرة	حديد ....
قصيدة شعر	اكتشاف ....
يبحر	منحوتات ....
رحلة بحرية	معقد ....
متحف	طريقة ....
صعب	أدوات ....
رحلة طويلة	إلهام ....
تقريبا	ثقافة ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتخيل	....	يطير	....
يتوقف	....	يركب	....
يسافر	....	يقرأ	....
يوافق	....	يعتقد	....
يسمي باسم	....	يجد	....
يتحرك	....	يكتب	....
يتدحرج/يلف	....	يتجمد	....
يدوم	....	يستطيع	....
		يتوه/يضل	....

Activities lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Amr went on a long voyage by the .... البحيرة - إدارة النوبارية (2023)

   a land b sea c desert d sand

2. Tourists like to .... camels across the desert.

   a drive b ride c play d fly

3. A/An .... is a person who studies very old objects.

   a engineer b teacher c farmer d archaeologist

4. Farmers use iron .... for farming. المنيا - إدارة العدوة (2023)

   a pens b pencils c tools d books

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. iron - There - farming - were - tools.

   -

2. famous - What - were - they - for?

   -

3. sailed - He - ship - the island - to - by.

   -

4. for - Luxor - I - to - went - a week.

   -

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We - - - - - - - - - - - - (don't) visit Aswan last summer. المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم (2023)
2. Did you - - - - - - - - - - - - (plays) well? الاسكندرية - إدارة شرق (2023)
3. My family - - - - - - - - - - - - (go) on vacation last week. الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2023)
4. Ahmed and Hani - - - - - - - - - - - - (was) in the school yesterday.
5. - - - - - - - - - - - - (Is) he happy last week? الأقصر (2023)

Lessons 3, 4 & 5



Vocabulary

منبهر	شراع ....
قافلة	سحرى ....
يتأرجح	سمات/مميزات ....
يتجول	آلة العود ....
قصة خرافية - أسطورة	تقليدي ....
مخيف	هادئ ....
منظر طبيعي	شروق الشمس ....
كثبان رملية	قبطان ....
منهك	الخشب ....
صوت بشرى	نهر النيل ....
خطير	لذيذ ....
مغامرة	ضخم ....
فارغ	لا يصدق ....
أمواج	لغة ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
.... يدوم	....	.... يبدو	....
.... يبحر	....	.... يذهب	....
.... يتوقف	....	.... يصنع	....

Activities lessons 3,4 & 5



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: أسوان (2023)

sails - traditional - felucca - amazing - skills

Today, I had an amazing experience. I went on a (1) .... on the River Nile. A Felucca is a (2) .... Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. The trip was (3) .... The boat had two white (4) ...., which moved gently in the wind.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My village is quiet and .... I can sleep well and enjoy the weather.
   - a) angry
   - b) hungry
   - c) peaceful
   - d) noisy
2. A/An .... is a group of camels and people traveling together.
   - a) village
   - b) caravan
   - c) oasis
   - d) river
3. The Pyramids in Giza were ....
   - a) small
   - b) tiny
   - c) huge
   - d) angry
4. The .... is a person who sails the ship.
   - a) nurse
   - b) captain
   - c) vet
   - d) teacher

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. you - legend - Did - the - hear? المنوفية - إدارة الشهداء (2023)

   ....

2. were - What - like - dromedaries - the? البحر الأحمر (2023)

   ....

3. experience - had - a - I - wonderful. السويس (2023)

   ....

4. village - The - quiet - was - peaceful - and. دمياط (2023)

   ....

Unit 6 Taking care

Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary

يعصر	نبات الشعير ....
يسخن	رسومات ....
تعليمات	العسل ....
فتيل الشمعة	وزة ....
زيت عطرى	بطة ....
عصا	تين ....
شمع النخيل	اعشاب ....
يضغط	بذور ....
قطرة	القمح ....
بتلات	ثوم ....
ملاعق	مادة الشمع (شمع خام) ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يقلب	....	يمسك لأعلى	....
يضيف	....	يقرأ بصوت عال	....
يشم/يصدر رائحة	....	يعتنى بـ	....
يعتمد على	....	يزرع	....
يجفف	....	يحافظ على	....
يحفظ	....		

Activities lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Palm .... makes really nice candles.

a leaves b wax c dates d trunks

2. They cut the .... of the flowers.

a ropes b petals c drops d hands

3. A wick is a little cotton .... inside the candle.

a stick b drop c hand d rope

4. Put little sugar in the milk and .... it.

a drop b throw c stir d squeeze

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. Mangoes - There - some - grapes - and - are.

----

2. perfume - oil - We can - candles - use - to make.

----

3. need - some - oil - We - perfume. أسيوط - إدارة البدارى (2023)

----

4. need - do - we - What - candles - for - making?

----

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. How .... (many) sugar do we need to make a cake?
2. There .... (is) any tea, I want to have some. الشرقية (2023)
3. I bought .... (a little) pens yesterday. الاسكندرية - إدارة شرق (2023)
4. I have .... (a few) oil in the bottle. المنوفية - إدارة تلا (2023)



Lessons 3, 4 & 5



Vocabulary

مقدم الرعاية	وصفة ....
لوحات مرسومة	قماش ....
أمير	مكونات ....
صولجان	سر ....
عرش	عجينة من الملح ....
تاج	هدية تذكارية ....
معجون أسنان	سادة ....
مندهش/مذهول	صينية خبز ....
قصير	فرن ....
جبهان	يذيب/يذوب ....
تمثال	يخبز ....
أثاث	يقطع ....
سجاد	خليط ....

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يفهم	....	يلاحظ ....
....	يستند على	....	يطرق/يدق ....
....	يرتدي	....	يدلك/يفرك ....
....	يترك/يغادر	....	يغطي ....
		....	يخلط ....

Activities lessons 3,4 & 5



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: (أسيوط 2023)

empty - shows - dining - head - throne

Peter and his parents live in a palace. His parents work there. one day Peter noticed something strange about the big painting in the ❶ .... room. This colorful painting ❷ .... one of the old kings sitting on the ❸ .... with a crown on his ❹ .... and a long scepter in his hand.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The king's ring is .... It's made of gold. (البحر الأحمر 2023)

   a) cheap b) weak c) precious d) long

2. The king lives in a .... (مطروح 2023)

   a) station b) palace c) library d) school

3. We use .... to wash our face and hands. (بوسعيد 2023)

   a) toothbrush b) soap c) soup d) perfume

4. The king sits on the .... (المنوفية 2023)

   a) throne b) throw c) crown d) cream

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. spices - Egypt - famous - its - is - for. (الأقصر 2023)

   ....

2. oven - the - Heat - a low - on temperature. (الدقهلية 2023)

   ....

3. shampoo - we - for - What - do - use?

   ....

4. loved - The Ancient - strong - Egyptian - perfumes. (الغربية 2023)

   ....

General Tests



امتحانات المحافظات على منهج الفصل الدراسى الأول

1 محافظة القاهرة

إدارة الزاوية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. ---------- are my favorite animals.
   a Bats b Cats c Hats d Mats
2. Cats are beautiful with ---------- fur.
   a soft b good c bad d hard
3. Cats are clean and ---------- animals.
   a tired b thirsty c happy d calm
4. Cats have sharp claws and ---------- .
   a teeth b hands c legs d fingers

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. People who are ---------- work for no money.
   a firefighters b bloggers c volunteers d engineers
2. My uncle is a / an ---------- .He studies very old objects.
   a chef b mechanic c vet d archeologist
3. Put little sugar in the tea and ---------- it.
   a cut b stir c drop d throw
4. There are amazing ---------- to try like the rollercoaster.
   a groups b rides c fights d tickets

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

independent - claws - fur - scared - walk

Cats are my favorite pets. They have soft (1) ---------- which is nice to touch. They are beautiful and calm animals. Cats like people but they are (2) ---------- .Cats have sharp (3) ---------- and teeth, but they use them when they are (4) ---------- .



4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Maha. I'm 14 Years old. On holidays, I help my family and my friends at our community garden. On the roof of our apartment block, we have a big green space. People in the neighborhood volunteer to help and **grow** vegetables with us to eat. We usually grow tomatoes, peppers, onions and lettuce. Sometimes, we also plant fruit trees like lemons and dates. It's amazing to grow your own food.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The underlined word "**grow**" means ....

   a draw   b cut   c plant   d need

2. The main idea of the text is ....

   a healthy habits   b community garden
   c sports   d my favorite game

3. Lemons and .... are the fruit trees they plant.

   a lettuce   b dates   c potatoes   d mangoes

B- Answer the following questions:

4. How do people help at the community garden?

   ....

5. When does Maha help her family?

   ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. summer - in - The weather - is - sunny - usually.

   ....

2. Italian - an - Marco Polo - is - explorer.

   ....

3. The selfish - anything - doesn't - boy - share.

   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He is .... (**interesting**) in reading.

2. When he .... (**heat**) ice, it melts.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

are you angry --

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

"An amazing trip"

Guiding words

went on a felucca - see the river

----

2 محافظة الجيزة

إدارة الحوامدية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Injy was reading a ---------- about her family's vacation.

   a book b story c travel diary d magazine

2. The favorite thing about the vacation was visiting the ---------- Museum

   a Marco Polo b Ibn Battuta
   c Vasco da Gama d Ahmed Zweil

3. Marco Polo was an ---------- explorer.

   a American b French c Italian d Egyptian

4. Injy was amazed by how ---------- the journey to China was in those days.

   a easy b smart c difficult d cheap

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We use natural ---------- to grow organic food.

   a tools b views c weather d fertilizers

2. The ---------- is the place where we do experiments.

   a library b playground c laboratory d hall

3. Cats have soft .... which is nice to touch.

a claws b fur c teeth d eyes

4. The word "celebration" means ....

a party b game c invitation d experience

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

concentrate - minutes - forget - time - break

It's important to study your lessons. It's not healthy to study for hours without a ❶ .... So you can study for about 30 ❷ .... but no longer. When you have regular breaks, you can ❸ .... .It's good to study at the same ❹ .... every day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I went on a trip to the zoo. I went with my family. We left our house at ten o'clock in the morning. We arrived at the zoo at eleven o'clock. We got five tickets to get into the zoo. We were very excited. My sister Dina wanted to see the lion first, but my brother Hany wanted to see the elephant first. My father and mother decided to see the giraffe first. The giraffe is a very amazing animal. It is very tall with a long neck. After that, we saw the elephant. It's very big with a long trunk. We also saw the lion. It's very strong. It eats meat. It was fun and we were very happy.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about a ....

a trip to the zoo b new supermarket
c trip to the beach d monkey

2. The .... is big with a long trunk.

a lion b elephant c giraffe d snake

3. The lion is very ....

a happy b funny c strong d tall

B- Answer the following questions:

4. When did they arrive at the zoo?

....

5. How many tickets did they get?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. fall - leaves - The - trees - the - from.

----

2. the park- sports - at - People - do - like to.

----

3. world - the - all - Birthdays - are celebrated - over.

----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My father .... (**goes always**) to work by car.
2. Mr. Adel is the teacher .... (**which**) helps me a lot.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how much wax do we need --

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

My birthday party

Guiding phrases

- all my family and friends
- play games and eat cakes

----

3 محافظة القليوبية

إدارة قها التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Ahmed was .... on his first day at school.
   a organized b shy c messy d friendly
2. Hassan was the .... who helped Ahmed.
   a doctor b teacher c friend d nurse
3. Hassan was .... at science.
   a clever b shy c nervous d polite
4. Ahmed .... his first day at school.
   a helped b took c needed d enjoyed

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Marco Polo was a famous ....
   a trader b farmer c explorer d fisherman
2. Cats are my best ....
   a fruit b pets c plants d vegetables
3. Organic food means we only use .... to grow fresh food.
   a chemicals b roof c garden d natural fertilizer
4. Let's go quad .... in the desert in Giza.
   a biking b playing c running d swimming

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

wood - mixed - papyrus - seeds - mint

Ancient Egyptians used toothpaste and toothbrushes to clean their teeth. The toothbrush was a stick with small pieces of (1) .... tied to it at one end. To keep their mouths fresh all day, they used (2) .... candies. To make these candies they (3) .... cinnamon, melon, pine (4) .... and some nuts together with honey. Ancient Egyptians always took care of themselves and their bodies.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Salma is inviting her mom to go to her school Mother's Day, At her school, they are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21st. Salma and her friend Reem are helping to get the place ready. Salma is hanging up the streamers and blowing up the balloons. She is sending invitations to all her friends and their moms to come to the celebration. Reem is making a playlist on her phone for this event.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The text is about ....
   - a Salma's birthday
   - b Reem's birthday
   - c Mother's Day
   - d exams
2. The celebration is in ....
   - a March
   - b February
   - c June
   - d April
3. Reem is sending ....
   - a streamers
   - b balloons
   - c invitations
   - d phones

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to?

....

5. What is Reem doing to help in this event?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. blow out - Children - candles - to - like - the.

....

2. grow - What - you - do - things - usually?

....

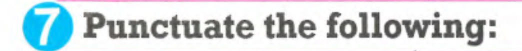
3. move - dunes - step - with - Sand - each.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This is the book .... (who) I read yesterday.
2. How .... (many) lemon oil do we need?



7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

In india, candles are left to burn

....

8 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

"Your community garden"

Guiding words

roof garden - volunteers

Your name is Khalid, and your email address is khalid@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Adham, and his email address is adham@gmail.com.

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



إدارة السادات التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. .... are celebrated all over the world.
   a Birthdays b Holidays c Mondays d Fridays
2. We usually make birthday .... for children.
   a beans b bread c eggs d cakes
3. We put .... on cakes.
   a bottles b candles c carrots d basbousa
4. Children usually get a ...., too.
   a sandwich b present c book d pen

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We went to the museum and .... through a big gate.
   a slept b built c passed d missed
2. We can .... up the hill to the dome of Abu Al-Hawa.
   a jump b climb c fly d swim
3. Tourists like to .... camels across the desert.
   a drive b cycle c ride d fly
4. Kings live in a ....
   a garden b palace c school d shop

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

library - Friday - restaurants - visit - eat

I live in a big city. There are many places to ❶ .... .There are lots of different ❷ .... and the food is tasty. There is a big park. I go to the park every ❸ .... and play football with my friends. We read and borrow books at the ❹ .... .We go shopping at the shopping center.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Osama. I love summer vacation for two reasons. The first reason is that I like summer fruit like grapes, mangoes and figs. The second reason is that we have

vacation for two months. Last vacation, I went to my grandparents' house for about a month. **They** live in a small village near Fayoum. I went there with my parents. Their house has lots of trees. There are mango trees and guava trees. We eat fresh fruit. Every evening, my grandfather takes us for a walk.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Osama likes _______________ vacation.
   a summer   b winter   c spring   d fall
2. The underlined word "**They**" refers to _______________ .
   a parents   b grandparents   c friends   d cousins
3. His grandfather takes them for a _______________ every evening.
   a meeting   b walk   c party   d carnival

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Where do Osama's grandparents live?

____

5. How long did they stay in the grandparents' house?

____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. go - park - to - Let's -theme - the.

____

2. space - has - a lot - of - New York - green.

____

3. trying - friends - to - I'm - help - my.

____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. __________ (off) you heat sugar, it melts.
2. This is the street __________ (who) my uncle lives.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

we can share my lunch today

____

8 **Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Cats are the best pets

Guiding phrases

- They are my favorite animals.
- They are independent.

----

5 محافظة الشرقية

إدارة بلبيس التعليمية

1 **Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Put the ingredients for your .... in a bowl.
   a soup   b space   c soap   d spice
2. .... the ingredients on a cooker.
   a Hit   b Heat   c Hide   d Had
3. Next, stir the ingredients with a .... spoon.
   a metal   b plastic   c wooden   d paper
4. You can add flower .... to make soap look and smell lovely.
   a petals   b pedals   c beetles   d puddles

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Early spring is the best season to .... seeds in the ground.
   a plant   b harvest   c drink   d paint
2. We do science experiments in ....
   a libraries   b playgrounds   c laboratories   d courts

3. Fatima is afraid of heights, but she decides to face her ....

a trip b fear c view d secret

4. .... is the air that comes out of your mouth.

a Sound b Food c Fire d Breath

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

shows - carnival - matches - rides - fantasy

Today is my birthday party and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the 1 .... ! It's an amazing place. When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of 2 .... -it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing 3 .... to try like the rollercoaster. There are theaters where you can watch 4 .... There are places to eat and stores, too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Every winter, thousands of people from all over the world come to spend their holidays in our great country, Egypt. They are tourists who come to enjoy the fine weather and sunshine of Egypt when it is very cold in their countries. They like to visit Luxor and Aswan. They like to see the ancient treasures of Egypt, so they like to visit the Egyptian Museum. They also visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx in Giza. Before they return home, They like to go to Khan El Khalili to buy some souvenirs.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Most tourists usually visit Egypt in ....

a summer b spring c winter d fall

2. Tourists like to visit .... to enjoy the fine weather in winter.

a Alexandria b London c Luxor and Aswan d Suez

3. They visit the Pyramids in ....

a Cairo b Giza c Tanta d Zagazig

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why do tourists come to Egypt?

....

5. What do tourists buy at Khan El Khalili?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. studying - exams -my - I'm - hard - for.

- -

2. honey - Bees - insects - make - are - which.

- -

3. did - books - Where - your - find - you?

- -

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Dalia ---------- (have) a gymnastics lesson twice a week.
2. How ---------- (many) time do we have?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

dina does her homework on the weekend

- -

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

An amazing trip

Guiding phrases

- When you went there.
- What the weather was like.

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

6 محافظة الغربية

إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Nardeen is ---------- years old.
   a eleven   b nine   c six   d twelve
2. Nardeen lives with her family in ---------- .
   a Tanta   b Luxor   c Cairo   d Aswan
3. There are many ---------- places to visit in Luxor.
   a dirty   b bad   c historical   d modern
4. A lot of ---------- visit Luxor every year.
   a tourists   b teachers   c doctors   d students

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can ride on the rollercoaster at the ---------- .
   a library   b theme park   c museum   d minaret
2. Mona is very ---------- . She is worried about talking to people.
   a friendly   b messy   c shy   d nervous
3. Can you ---------- a playlist for the party?
   a eat   b send   c cut   d make
4. I need my credit card to ---------- for the ticket.
   a pay   b run   c play   d see

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

volunteers - market - tomorrow - green - vegetables

We need more community gardens. The community garden is a big ❶---------- space on the roof of an apartment block. The people who work there are all ❷---------- from the neighborhood. They grow ❸---------- to eat, and sometimes they sell them in the ❹---------- .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my sister's birthday. We are all happy and busy, too. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister's party, My brother is blowing up some balloons. They're bright and colorful. My mom made a nice cake for my sister. Dalia and Noha are decorating the birthday cake. We have 10 candles for the cake to show my sister's age. My father sent the invitations to our friends. We are all very **excited**!

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. I'm hanging up the _______________ .

   a balloons   b invitations   c streamers   d cakes

2. The underlined word "**excited**" means very _______________ .

   a bored   b sad   c angry   d happy

3. My sister is _______________ years old.

   a nine   b ten   c seven   d fifteen

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is my brother doing?

   ____

5. Who sent the invitations?

   ____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. moving - the - **Something** - house - is - inside.

   ____

2. children - not - for - **Birthdays** - just - are.

   ____

3. you - book - **Where** - did - find - your?

   ____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. When it __________ (**rain**), we play indoors.
2. I like the house __________ (**who**) I was born.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

we need some wax

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

An amazing trip

Guiding phrases

fantastic places - nice views

7 محافظة الدقهلية

إدارة المطرية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Nour asks Mariam to go to her house ....
   a tomorrow   b today   c yesterday   d tonight
2. Mariam goes to help her .... on Fridays.
   a uncle   b aunt   c sister   d cousin
3. They .... vegetables and fruit in the garden.
   a draw   b grow   c clean   d play
4. Mariam thinks the community garden is a .... idea.
   a good   b bad   c tall   d fast

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Sara is very .... She likes talking to people.
   a angry   b nervous   c shy   d friendly
2. Hany is the boy .... sits under the tree.
   a what   b where   c who   d which
3. Fully grown people, not children. They are ....
   a babies   b adults   c children   d gardens
4. How .... lemons do we need for the lemonade?
   a many   b long   c much   d old

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

has - but - hotels- weather- go

Sharm El-Sheikh is a beautiful town in Egypt. It is in the east of Egypt. It has a nice ❶ .... Tourists from all over the world visit it every year. Sharm El-Sheikh ❷ .... a lot of things to do. Tourists can ❸ .... diving in the Red Sea. They can go shopping at department stores. Tourists can stay in ❹ .... Sharm El-Sheikh is a green town.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, we went on a picnic. We took some delicious food and fresh juice with us. We played football. In the afternoon, we went to a temple. My father told us that it was very old. The temple was on a small hill. And we enjoyed climbing there. It was really a cool and comfortable place. There was also a small river near the temple. We went on a boat there. Then, we had our lunch and returned home in the evening. I really had a great time. We were very happy.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The temple was very ....

   a happy b small c old d tall

2. They took some .... and fresh juice with them.

   a books b food c pens d paper

3. The underlined word "it" related to the ....

   a temple b picnic c father d river

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Where was the temple?

   ----

5. When did they return home?

   ----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. traveling - to London - you - Are - tomorrow?

   ----

2. have - a lot - of - We - candles.

   ----

3. I'm - surprised - you - to - see -,Farida.

   ----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. If you feel tired, you can ---------- (went) to bed early.
2. My sisters are ---------- (cook) some food.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

ahmed and tamer are good friends.

- -

8 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب ايميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To your friend Mona telling her about your **last birthday party**. Your name is Nadia and your email address is nadia@email.com and your friend's email is mona@email.com

Guiding phrases

- sending invitations. - birthday cake.

New Message

To	....	Cc Bcc
From	....	
Subject	....	

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

8 محافظة كفر الشيخ

إدارة مطوبس التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Sharm El-Sheikh is a town in ....

a Egypt   b China   c Scotland   d Italy

2. You can swim in the .... blue sea with your friends.

a clean   b cool   c clear   d cold

3. You also can relax on the ....

a peach   b beach   c park   d sand

4. You can go quad biking in the ....

a sea   b lake   c river   d desert

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can .... the souks to see what's new there.

a take   b choose   c go   d explore

2. She went on a .... by sea.

a flight   b voyage   c hike   d climb

3. My community is the people who live in my ....

a school   b club   c neighborhood   d roof

4. People buy and .... things at the market.

a grow   b make   c sell   d plant

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

candles - presents - cakes - old - ages

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday (1) .... for our children and put (2) .... on them to show their (3) ....We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ali is inviting his mom to go to his school's Mother's Day celebration. At his school, they are organizing a special day for the event on Saturday March 21st.

Ali and his friend Ahmed are helping to get the place ready. Ali is hanging up the streamers, blowing up the balloons, and decorating the place. **He** is sending the invitations to all his friends and their moms to come to the celebration. Ahmed is making a playlist on his phone for the event.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The celebration is happening in the month of ....

a March   b February   c January   d October

2. Ali is sending the .... to all his friends.

a streamers   b balloons   c invitations   d phones

3. .... is making a playlist on his phone.

a Ali   b Ahmed   c Aser   d Mom

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**He**" refer to?

....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. claws - have - **Cats** - sharp - and teeth.

....

2. weather - **The** - is - today - sunny.

....

3. is - famous - Polo - **Why** - Marco?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This is the shirt .... (**who**) I wear to work.
2. We .... (**go**) on vacation last week.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

we work in the community garden

....

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

"My school"

Guiding words

IT building - a lot of benches

----

9 محافظة الاسماعيلية

إدارة شمال الاسماعيلية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Cats are my favorite ....
   a) animals b) birds c) reptiles d) insects
2. Cats use their claws when they are ....
   a) happy b) sad c) tired d) scared
3. They are beautiful with .... fur.
   a) hard b) soft c) bad d) no
4. They are .... and calm.
   a) messy b) ugly c) dirty d) clean

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A lot of local .... in Aswan work in tourism.
   a) residents b) tourists c) farmers d) doctors
2. Let's go quad .... in the Giza desert.
   a) swimming b) biking c) playing d) running
3. We can ride .... across the desert.
   a) ships b) boats c) dromedaries d) shops
4. I always send .... to my friends to come to my party.
   a) celebration b) vacation c) invitation d) organization

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

roof - fertilizer - flowers - plant - chemical

Helping the environment is very important. We can do this if we ❶ .... more trees. Some people plant ❷ .... and other plants on the ❸ .... of their houses. They use natural ❹ .... to make the plants grow well.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ibn Battuta is one of the greatest explorers in history. He lived during the 14th century. He was born in 1304. Ibn Battuta wanted to explore the world to visit the important Muslim cities and to learn about different cultures. He started his journey at the age of 21, and it lasted for 29 years. He visited places like Egypt, India. China, and many more. He didn't travel by plane like we do today. He used camels, boats, and walked long distances. Ibn Battuta wrote about his journey. His writing helped us understand and respect the differences between different places in the world. We also learned to be brave and curious to reach our dreams.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Ibn Battuta started his journey when he was ....
   a 21 b 29 c 75 d 14
2. In his journey, he used ....
   a cars b trains c planes d camels
3. The underlined word "it" refers to ....
   a Ibn Battuta b the journey c the camel d Egypt

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why did Ibn Battuta want to explore the world?

....

5. What do we learn from Ibn Battuta's journeys?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. birthday - **When** - your - is?

....

2. decided to - her - **Fatima** - fear - face.

....

3. explorer - Italian - **Marco Polo** - was - an.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This is the street .... (who) my uncle lives.
2. How .... (much) pens do you have?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

what an adventure ....

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your vacation

Guiding questions

- Where did you go?
- What did you do there?

....

....

....

....

10 محافظة الاسكندرية

إدارة شرق التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Cats are .... and calm animals.
   a heavy   b sad   c clean   d bad
2. Their .... is nice to touch.
   a fur   b hair   c tail   d eye
3. Rana thinks cats are the best ....
   a candles   b streamers   c plants   d pets
4. Cats make Rana feel ....
   a surprised   b happy   c clever   d nervous

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I need .... to wash my hair.
   a sugar   b toothpaste   c shampoo   d cream

2. Jana is ---------- ; she is tidy and careful.

a shy b messy c nervous d organized

3. We play basketball and handball during ---------- lessons.

a science b IT c French d physical education

4. Salem ---------- a trip every year.

a takes b rides c sails d writes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

vegetables - sell - block - community - chemicals

Nada visits her uncle every week. She likes to help him at his 1 ---------- garden. It's a big green space on the roof of his apartment 2 ---------- . The people who work there are his neighbors. They eat the fruit and 3 ---------- they grow. They sometimes 4 ---------- them. Nada thinks that the community garden is a good idea because it keeps the air clean in the city.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hello, I'm Ali. Yesterday was my mother's birthday. My family gave her an exciting birthday party because she always helps and supports us. Mom does her best to make our family happy. My brother Omar, hung up the streamers with the help of my cousin Salem. My dad blew up the balloons and helped mom decorate the cake. On the other hand, my sister Lara made a playlist on her phone. She chose my mother's favorite songs. My aunt let off the fireworks when it got dark. It was an **amazing** birthday party which showed our love to mom.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about ---------------- .

a mom's new job b an exam night
c a strange night d mom's birthday party

2. The underlined word "**amazing**" means ---------------- .

a wonderful b bad c terrible d sad

3. Lara made a ---------------- on her phone.

a balloon b candle c playlist d firework

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why did the family give mom a birthday party?

----

5. Summarize the text in two sentences.

----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. happy - Ahmed - was - very - Cairo - in. ....
2. surprised - to - see - you - I - am. ....
3. story - do - Which - like - to read - you? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Dalia is the girl .... (when) sits next to me.
2. Did you .... (played) well?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

ali visited his grandma on saturday.

....

8 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To tell your friend Sara about **your vacation plans**. Your name is Mona and your email address is Mona@email.com. Your friend's email is Sara@email.com.

Guiding questions

- The places you are going to visit.
- What you are going to do?

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

....

11 محافظة مطروح

إدارة مطروح التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Asser is ---------- years old.
   - a nine
   - b six
   - c seven
   - d twelve
2. He goes to school ---------- .
   - a on foot
   - b by bus
   - c by taxi
   - d bike
3. Asser's favorite subject is ---------- .
   - a English
   - b science
   - c math
   - d Arabic
4. He wants to be ---------- when he is older.
   - a a teacher
   - b a doctor
   - c a student
   - d an engineer

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We use natural ---------- to grow organic food.
   - a roof
   - b fertilizer
   - c bird
   - d candy
2. My sister is never ---------- .She is calm and relaxed.
   - a friendly
   - b nervous
   - c messy
   - d kind
3. It's Nesma's birthday party. I'm hanging up the ---------- .
   - a invitations
   - b fireworks
   - c playlists
   - d streamers
4. ---------- are people you invite to your home.
   - a Guests
   - b Noodles
   - c Scissors
   - d Fireworks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

windows - biking - take - tourists - interesting

Sharm El-Sheikh is an amazing holiday destination. It's an (1) ------------ and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. Many (2) ---------- like to visit it because there are lots of things to see and do. They can go quad (3) ---------- in the desert. They can swim in the sea. They can also relax on the beach and (4) -------- photos.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My uncle gave me an old book which tells interesting information about some places in Egypt. I will tell you about some of them. St Catherine's Mountain is the highest mountain in Egypt. It's about 2600 meters high. The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It's about 6600 kilometers long. The Great Pyramid at Giza is one of the oldest buildings in the world. Scientists think it's very heavy. They think that it is the heaviest building in Egypt.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The River Nile is _______________ long.
   a 2600 meters
   b 6600 kilometers
   c six million kilograms
   d 5000 centimeters
2. The Great Pyramid is in _______________ .
   a Aswan
   b Sinai
   c Giza
   d Siwa
3. _______________ think that the Great Pyramid is the heaviest building in Egypt.
   a Scientists
   b Ancient Egyptians
   c My father
   d My uncle

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What does the old book tell you?

   ____

5. What is the highest mountain in Egypt?

   ____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. play - you - do - often - **How** - football?

   ____

2. are - you - when - study - hungry - **Don't** .

   ____

3. studying - is - **Hatem** - exams - his - for.

   ____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This is the street _______________ (who) my uncle lives.
2. Hani didn't _______________ (went) to the station yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

can you blow up some balloons

---

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Animals in the forest

Guiding questions

- What are these animals?
- What do they eat?

---

12 محافظة البحيرة

إدارة النوبارية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Elephants are the .... land animals.
   a thinnest b smallest c largest d tallest
2. Elephants can be as heavy as a ....
   a train b car c bus d truck
3. Elephants have long ....
   a arms b eyes c trunks d tooth
4. Elephants love to eat .... and grass.
   a leaves b eggplants c oranges d wheat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Our .... is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view of the city.
   a apartment b lock c black d brake

2. People who are __________ work for no money.

a firefighter   b volunteers   c bloggers   d engineers

3. __________ are people you invite to your home.

a Fireworks   b Guests   c Parents   d Teachers

4. Ali has worked as a teacher for seven years. He has good __________ in teaching.

a experience   b accident   c travel   d trip

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

Festival - block - Fridays - cleaning - local

Hanan asks Hoda to go to her house tomorrow but Hoda goes to help her aunt on ❶ ____________. They work in a community garden on the roof of an apartment ❷ _________. They grow vegetables and fruit for people in the ❸ __________.Hoda thinks that the community garden is a good idea for ❹ ________ the air in the city.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they are the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur, which is nice to touch. **They** are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you play with a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for you and make you laugh.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Cats are ________________ friendly.

a never   b rarely   c usually   d sometimes

2. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ________________.

a people   b pets   c claws   d cats

3. Cats are ________________ animals.

a clean   b noisy   c dirty   d lazy

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why do cats use their claws?

____

5. Why do you cats think cats are the best pets?

____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. in - our cousin - **We** - visit - Aswan.

----

2. make - going to - **Dalia** - is - a playlist.

----

3. was - **Marco Polo** - explorer - an Italian.

----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He is .... (**interesting**) in reading.
2. Sara is the girl .... (**which**) sits next to me.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

where did Injy go to on vacation

----

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your pet

Guiding words

clean and independent - soft fur

----

13 محافظة الفيوم

إدارة طامية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Ali visits grandparents in ---------- .

a October b May c June d July

2. Ali goes ---------- with his grandpa.

a swimming b running c fishing d walking

3. Ali plays football with his ----------

a friends b father c brother d parent

4. He sometimes helps his ---------- in the kitchen.

a father b sister c grandma d friends

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. People who are ---------- work for no money.

a firefighters b bloggers c volunteers d doctors

2. Salma is ---------- up the balloons for her sister's birthday.

a blowing b eating c sending d drinking

3. The girl is ---------- .She never shares anything with others.

a messy b selfish c friendly d happy

4. Mr Ahmed is the teacher ---------- teaches us English.

a where b which c when d who

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

friendly - walk - independent - fur - pet

Cats are my favorite animal. They are beautiful with soft (1) ------------ which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually (2) ------------ . They like people but they're (3) ------------ . You don't need to take them for a (4) ------------ .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

In a village, there live a giant who has a wonderful garden. In this garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The **lovely** garden always makes the children happy. But the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden. So one day he built a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The moral of the lesson is not to be ---------------.

a kind b selfish c fast d colorful

2. Children visit the garden ---------------.

a on weekends b twice a week c every day d twice a day

3. The underlined word "**lovely**" means ---------------.

a fast b beautiful c boring d scary

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why did the giant build a wall around the garden?

----

5. Do you think the giant likes children?

----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. summer - in - The Weather - is - sunny - always.

----

2. sister - How - many - you - do - have?

----

3. a lot of - have - I - books - my room - in.

----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. What --------------- (are) your favorite food?

2. I like football --------------- (and) I don't like tennis.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i am excited about my vacation

---

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

A trip down the Nile

Guiding words

- felucca on the Nile
- enjoyed the trip

---

14 محافظة بني سويف

إدارة ناصر التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Samy's family went to ....
   - a Luxor
   - b Cairo
   - c Aswan
   - d Giza
2. Samy's family went there by ....
   - a ship
   - b bus
   - c car
   - d train
3. Last .... Samy had great fun.
   - a year
   - b month
   - c week
   - d day
4. Samy visited the Egyptian ....
   - a School
   - b Club
   - c Park
   - d Museum

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We .... tomatoes, peppers, onions, and lettuce.
   - a help
   - b plant
   - c sleep
   - d go

2. I like to .... new places, so I always travel to many countries.

a explore   b write   c eat   d ask

3. I'd like to .... at the beach.

a city   b relax   c uniform   d saw

4. Koshari is a .... Egyptian meal.

a slow   b peace   c modern   d traditional

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

car - Fridays - community - city - fruit

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house tomorrow, but Mariam goes to help her aunt on 1 ....They work in a 2 .... garden on the roof of an apartment block. They grow vegetables and 3 .... for people in the local area, and sometimes they sell them, too. Mariam thinks the community garden is a good idea because the plants also help to clean the air in the 4 ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Salma. I moved to a **nice** city with a new school. I was nervous and shy on the first day at school, but I met Lara. She helped me get to know the school. She took me around the school and showed me where my classrooms are. She also stayed with me at the break. She helped me get the books and the worksheets I need. She's a very kind person. Now I feel happy and I love my new school.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The underlined word "**nice**" means ....

a bad   b ugly   c tall   d wonderful

2. Salma moved to a new city with a new ....

a house   b restaurant   c hospital   d school

3. Lara .... with Salma at the break.

a sang   b stayed   c taught   d knew

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Summarize the main idea of the text in a sentence.

....

5. How does Salma feel now?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. travel - How - you - did - there?

---

2. are - What - you - doing - now?

---

3. palace - lives in - Ramy - with - a big - his parents.

---

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The film .... (who) I saw yesterday was great.
2. We are .... (eat) fish now.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i live in a nice city

---

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your birthday

Guiding phrases

- hang up the streamers
- decorate the birthday cake

15 محافظة أسيوط

إدارة منفلوط التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. The giant has a big ....
   a house b farm c garden d lake
2. He doesn't allow the .... to play in his garden.
   a children b animals c birds d fish
3. The giant is ....
   a shy b polite c nervous d selfish
4. He builds a .... around his garden.
   a castle b wall c flat d home

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We don't use .... when we grow organic food.
   a fertilizers b chemicals c water d seeds
2. We do science experiments in the ....
   a laboratory b playground c gymnasium d IT building
3. I made a/an .... of the best 20 songs nowadays.
   a cake b firework c playlist d invitation
4. There is some .... in the fridge.
   a soup b tomatoes c beans d cats

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

played - enjoyed - liked - went - movie

Yesterday was a fun day. We (1) .... to the beach and swam in the sea. We ate pizza and we (2) .... handball. After that, we went to the cinema to watch a (3) .... We watched a funny movie and we ate popcorn. We (4) .... our time.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I traveled to Egypt last year with my family to see the Giza Pyramids. A guide helped us to explore the Great Pyramid of Khufu because we were amazed by the ancient culture. **We** looked at the hieroglyphics inside and discovered that the ancient Egyptians were able to build these huge pyramids. We also went to the Sphinx and learned about its importance. We were very excited and hoped to visit more historical sites next time.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**We**" refers to __________.

   a the family   b Pyramids   c the Sphinx   d hieroglyphics

2. A __________ helps us explore the Great Pyramid of Khufu.

   a doctor   b teacher   c guide   d nurse

3. The trip was very __________.

   a boring   b exciting   c funny   d tiring

B- Answer the following questions:

4. When did you travel to Egypt?

   ----

5. What did you learn about the Sphinx?

   ----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. the community - **Do** - work - garden - you - in?

   ----

2. favorite - **Football** - game - my - is.

   ----

3. go - **We** - to - the - want - beach - to.

   ----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The person __________ (**which**) is standing there is my uncle.
2. How __________ (**old**) do you watch TV? Three times a week.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

they re playing with the balloons.

- -

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

"Your birthday party"

Guiding words
balloons - decorate

- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -

16 محافظة سوهاج

إدارة طما التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. When did Nabil go to a new school?
   a last week b last month c last year d last Friday
2. What is Essam like?
   a shy b polite c clever d calm
3. Who is good at math?
   a Sherif b Ahmed c Nabil d Essam
4. Where did Nabil go?
   a A club b A hospital c A supermarket d A school

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We always buy vegetables at the ....

a market b office c club d hospital

2. My friend is very .... She is always helpful, too.

a nervous b careless c kind d messy

3. My sister can .... invitations online.

a decorate b send c hang d sing

4. Tamer will .... photos for his school project.

a take b ride c go d climb

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

holiday - choose - places - time - noodles

We like vacations. We should plan to go to good ❶ .... We can ❷ .... the cheapest and quietest place to spend our ❸ .... We should think how to get to this place and the suitable ❹ .... for us.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt is a country in North Africa. Most of Egypt is desert. Egypt has the longest river in the world, the Nile. Tourists come to visit Egypt from all over the world. They come to enjoy its sunny weather. They go to Luxor and Aswan to see the great monuments. They can also visit the Pyramid and the Sphinx in Giza. They can take a lot of photos of the Pyramids. Hurghada is a famous town for tourists. They can do many activities there. They can swim and go diving in the sea. They can relax on the beach.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Egypt is a country in .... Africa.

a north b south c east d west

2. Egypt has the longest .... in the world.

a desert b river c sea d lake

3. .... is a famous town for tourists.

a Cairo b Sohag c Hurghada d Minia

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What can tourists do in Hurghada?

----

5. Why do tourists go to Aswan and Luxor?

----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. school - proud - are - **We** - our - of.

----

2. exciting - **Football** - more - tennis - is - than.

----

3. go - **We** - to - the - want - beach - to.

----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She always ---------- (**go**) to school early.
2. We are ---------- (**play**) tennis now.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i went to Alexandria last summer

----

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your vacation trip

Guiding questions

1 - Where did you go?
2 - How long were you there?

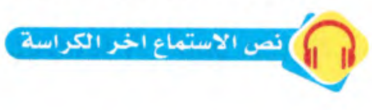


محافظة قنا

إدارة نجع حمادى التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. My friend Asser is in ___________.
   - a Cairo
   - b Giza
   - c Alexandria
   - d Aswan
2. They had lunch at ___________.
   - a home
   - b a restaurant
   - c a garden
   - d a hotel
3. We took photos in the ___________.
   - a hotel
   - b desert
   - c theme park
   - d restaurant
4. Asser will visit me in Cairo ___________.
   - a next week
   - b on Friday
   - c tomorrow
   - d next year

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The special green areas help people enjoy ___________.
   - a projects
   - b nature
   - c organization
   - d location
2. A ___________ person is helpful and nice to others.
   - a friendly
   - b nervous
   - c messy
   - d shy
3. There are a lot of ___________ to help in the project.
   - a perfumes
   - b guests
   - c chemicals
   - d volunteers
4. Many ___________ come to my birthday party.
   - a pets
   - b guess
   - c guests
   - d games

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

play - line - apartment - areas - of - out

I'm Hala. I'm from Hurghada. I moved to Cairo with my family. Our ❶ ___________ is on the 7th floor. There are lots of green ❷ ___________ here. We go ❸ ___________ every Friday to enjoy. We go to a nice park where we can ❹ ___________.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Talia. I live in Aswan. Today is my birthday. My family made me a great surprise. Today, I had an amazing experience. We went on a felucca on the River Nile. The weather was great and the sun was shining. A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, Kareem was very strong. The trip was amazing. We had lunch in a beautiful garden by Nile. We went back home late at ten o'clock. I was very happy.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Talia had a/an ---------- experience.

   a boring　b bad　c difficult　d amazing

2. Talia went on a ---------- on the Nile.

   a bus　b car　c felucca　d ship

3. Felucca is a ---------- Egyptian boat.

   a new　b frightened　c traditional　d modern

B- Answer the following questions:

4. How was the trip?

   ----

5. Who was the captain of the boat?

   ----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. yesterday - didn't - **The ship** - the - port - leave.

   ----

2. you - go - **How often** - do - swimming?

   ----

3. Egypt - **The weather** - always - is - sunny - in.

   ----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Tamer and Alaa .... (are) at school yesterday.
2. I don't .... (visiting) my uncle on Saturday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

Marco polo visited China in the 13th century

....

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your favorite place

Guiding questions

- What activities can you do there?
- Why do you like it?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

18 محافظة الأقصر

إدارة الأقصر التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Our .... is on the sixteenth floor.
   a apartment b house c farm d bank
2. Is that the house .... your uncle lives?
   a who b which c how d where
3. Ahmed and Omar .... in my class last year.
   a is b are c were d was
4. My school is great .... It's far from my house.
   a because b but c and d so

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The people you invite to your home are your ....
   a subjects b ghosts c hosts d guests
2. Mini forest .... help to look after the trees.
   a doctors b volunteers c teachers d tourists
3. Mona is very .... She shows respect to everyone.
   a shy b messy c polite d nervous
4. She decides to .... her fear.
   a play b see c make d face

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

independent - claws - fur - scared - walk

Cats are my favorite pets. They have soft (1) .... which is nice to touch. Cats like people but they're (2) .... Cats have sharp (3) .... and teeth, but they only use them when they are (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies and ate well. Ancient Egyptians ate a lot of vegetables and fruits. They used wheat and barley to make bread. Most people in **Ancient** Egypt only ate a little meat. They probably ate a few fish and birds. They also ate some eggs and cheese. They used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks. Some families used spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about ----------.

a Ancient Egyptians
b Ancient buildings
c the River Nile
d Ancient Chinese

2. Ancient Egyptians used ---------- and wheat to make bread.

a barley b metal c paper d eggs

3. The opposite of the underlined word "**Ancient**" is ----------.

a noisy b modern c lovely d difficult

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What did Ancient Egyptians use to make their cooking taste better?

----

5. How did Ancient Egyptians make cakes?

----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. play - you - do - **How often** - football?

----

2. summer - in - **The weather** - is usually - sunny.

----

3. is - apartment - **Our** - on - seventh - the - floor.

----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. How ---------- (much) eggs are in the recipe?
2. We don't have ---------- (some) water.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

ahmed doesn't have any grapes

- -

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

A trip by a felucca

Guiding phrases

- traditional felucca
- amazing experience

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

- -

19 محافظة أسوان

إدارة كوم أمبو التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Basel is ---------- and helpful.

a shy b messy c kind d nervous

2. He visited his grandparents in the ---------- .

a winter b summer c fall d spring

3. He went ---------- with his grandpa.

a fishing b swimming c running d walking

4. He helped his grandma in the ---------- .

a living room b bedroom c bathroom d kitchen

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A lot of local .... in Aswan work in tourism.

   a residents b tourists c farmers d fisherman

2. My friend Magdy is good at math, he is ....

   a messy b bad c clever d ugly

3. You can open the ...., it's very hot.

   a watch b window c wolf d west

4. I'm .... up the streamers for my sister's birthday.

   a blowing b cutting c hanging d writing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

clean - walk - independent - fur - pet

Cats are my favorite animals. They are beautiful with soft 1 .... which is nice in touch. They are 2 .... and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are 3 .... .We don't need to take them for a 4 .... every day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday Ali didn't go to school because it was a holiday. He and his friend Marwan walked to the zoo. It was a sunny day. They arrived at seven in the morning. They saw many animals. They liked the giraffe but they didn't like the lions. They saw monkeys and gave them some bananas. Monkeys are funny animals. They had mango juice and ate sandwiches there. They left the zoo at three o'clock in the afternoon. They were very happy. They went back home by bus.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The text is about a visit to the ....

   a museum b pyramids c zoo d park

2. Ali and Marwan went to the zoo ....

   a by bus b by train c on foot d by car

3. They liked the ....

   a giraffe b dog c lion d tiger

B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why didn't they go to school yesterday?

----

5. When did they leave the zoo?

----

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. go - to- park - Let's - theme - the.

----

2. can - What - you - Sharm El-Sheikh - at - see?

----

3. make - going to - Mona - is - playlist - a.

----

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He usually .... (go) to school by bus.
2. We had a science class .... (at) Monday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

marco Polo was a famous explorer

----

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

"Your school"

Guiding phrases

- big and clean
- classrooms and playground

----

20 محافظة الوادى الجديد

إدارة الداخلة التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Basel and Hazem are __________ .

a brothers   b teachers   c friends   d vets

2. They are going to go quad biking in the __________ .

a sea   b desert   c river   d lake

3. The theme park is in __________ city.

a Cairo   b Luxor   c Aswan   d Giza

4. They want to ride on a __________ .

a rollercoaster   b camel   c horse   d bus

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Sara is very __________ .She likes talking to people.

a messy   b shy   c friendly   d nervous

2. They prefer to eat __________ food with no chemicals.

a bad   b polluted   c dirty   d organic

3. You can go quad __________ in the desert.

a fishing   b swimming   c biking   d playing

4. Although she was afraid of heights, she tried to face her __________ .

a trip   b secret   c fear   d view

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

do - candles - present - age - make

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt, we usually 1 __________ cakes for our children and put 2 __________ on them to show their 3 __________ .The children usually get a 4 __________ too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

We need some wax for making the candles. Palm wax from Egyptian palm trees makes really **nice** candles. We need some perfume oil. We squeeze in about 40 drops of this oil to make three candles. We can take flowers and press them on the tops of candles. We need one glass and one wick for each candle. We use some popsicle sticks to hold the wick up. We heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**nice**" means ....

   a good　b high　c bad　d beautiful

2. The main idea of the text is about ....

   a making bread　b making paper
   c making candles　d making food

3. We use some .... to hold the wick up.

   a pens　b popsicle sticks　c metals　d glasses

B- Answer the following questions:

4. What do we need to make candles?

   ....

5. How many wicks do we need for each candle?

   ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. rains - **It** - the Western Desert - rarely - in.

   ....

2. is - **She** - science - in - interested.

   ....

3. did - you - **What** - on - the weekend - do?

   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The tablet ---------- (switch) off if you press this button.

2. Is Ali the boy ---------- (which) lives in your building?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

fares was angry with his brother yesterday

----

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

"A place you like visiting"

Guiding questions

- Why do you like it?
- What can you do there?

----

21 منطقة المنوفية

الأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

onions - community garden - to come - space - do

Abeer : Do you have any information about my uncle's ❶ _____________?

Asmaa : No, I don't. What's that?

Abeer : It's a big green ❷ _____________ on the roof of his apartment block.

Asmaa : What things do you ❸ _____________ there?

Abeer : We grow a lot of things; tomatoes, peppers and ❹ _____________.

Asmaa : That's interesting. OK, I'd like ❺ _____________.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	grapes	onions	bananas	mangoes	-----
2	here	hare	monkey	elephant	-----
3	lake	river	stream	desert	-----
4	oil	ticket	juice	money	-----
5	track	truck	bus	car	-----

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The _____________ is at the top of a building.

 a roof b loaf c floor d road

2. We _____________ do sports in the morning. We like that very much.

 a never b usually c rarely d usual

3. Zeinab is _____________. She shows respect to everyone.

 a shy b nervous c polite d angry

4. The tablet switches off if you _____________ this button.

 a press b pressing c will press d presses

5. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim .... spring.

a at   b in   c on   d of

6. Mom .... the cake now.

a made   b is making   c makes   d make

7. A .... is a type of earth that is sticky when it is wet.

a tool   b mystery   c clay   d pen

8. Hani didn't .... on the palace tour with the guide.

a go   b went   c goes   d going

9. The king is sitting on the throne and wearing a .... on his head.

a crown   b scepter   c dress   d shirt

10. Could you lend me .... money, please?

a many   b a few   c some   d a lot

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Fatima's grandpa lives in a big city, on the 18th floor of an apartment block. Fatima used to be afraid of heights. She used to be afraid to look out of windows, because they were up so high. But her grandpa would sit by the window and point out all the **interesting** things in the city. Now Fatima likes to look out of her grandpa's windows. She can see the library, the train station and the park. She feels very grown up.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What floor is the grandpa's apartment? ....

2. Why was Fatima afraid when she looked out of the windows?

....

3. What can Fatima see from the grandpa's windows?

....

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. Fatima's grandpa doesn't live in a .... city.

a big   b large   c small   d huge

5. The underlined word "**interesting**" means ....

a boring   b exciting   c shy   d messy

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. subject - **What** - good at - is - she?

- -

2. any - **Salma** - isn't - cake - eating.

- -

3. surprised - for - **Are** - the test - passing - you?

- -

4. works - **My brother** - in - library - the.

- -

5. the dentist - you - do - **How** - go - often - to?

- -

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

"Tips for studying"

Guiding words

get up - study - revise - healthy food - breaks

- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -
- -

22 محافظة القاهرة - إدارة حلوان التعليمية

امتحان طلاب الدمج

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Rana is ....She always gets high marks.
   a bad b clever c lazy d busy
2. The film was .... I didn't like it.
   a amazing b interesting c boring d fantastic
3. A giant is very ....
   a small b tiny c big d short
4. We use natural .... to grow organic food.
   a tools b fertilizers c view d food
5. People should eat .... food.
   a healthy b unhealthy c fast d fat
6. Ali always .... chess with his friends.
   a plays b playing c play d cut
7. How .... cups of coffee did he have?
   a much b often c many d old
8. We .... to the zoo yesterday.
   a go b goes c going d went
9. What are you .... ?
   a do b does c doing d did
10. This is the house .... I live.
    a where b which c who d when

2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ali. I love my school very much. My school is next to my house. I go to school on foot. I go to school by myself. I go to school at seven o'clock. I study English, Arabic, math, science and art. My favorite subject is English. I want to be a doctor when I grow up. My school is clean and nice. I go home at two o'clock.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is a / an ....

ⓐ passage ⓑ email ⓒ letter ⓓ form

2. Ali is a / an ....

ⓐ doctor ⓑ teacher ⓒ student ⓓ chef

3. Ali's favorite subject is ....

ⓐ math ⓑ English ⓒ science ⓓ art

4. Ali goes to school ....

ⓐ by bus ⓑ by car ⓒ by bike ⓓ on foot

(B) Writing

3 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b or c:

اختر الجمل الصحيحة

1. decorating - They - are - house - the.

ⓐ They are decorating the house. ⓑ They house are decorating the.

ⓒ They are the house decorating.

2. are - favorite - my - Cats - animals.

ⓐ Cats my animals favorite are. ⓑ Cats are my favorite animals.

ⓒ Cats animals are my favorite.

4 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

اختر ورتب العبارات الآتية لتكوين فقرة إنشائية:

ⓐ She went to hospital.	1- ( )
ⓑ The doctor gave her medicine there.	2- ( )
ⓒ My sister was sick.	3- ( )
ⓓ She is doing better today.	4- ( )

5 Choose the correct punctuated sentence from a, b or c:

اختر الجمل الصحيحة:

egypt is in africa

ⓐ Egypt is in africa. ⓑ egypt is in Africa. ⓒ Egypt is in Africa.

Listening Material



نصوص الاستماع الواردة فى كراسة التدريبات

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع الواردة فى كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات الخاصة باختبارات الشهور

October test 1

Cats are nice animals. Cats are my favorite animals. Cats are beautiful with soft fur. They are clean and calm animals. Cats have sharp claws and teeth.

October test 2

Asmaa and Hoda are friends. Hoda goes to help her aunt. They work in a community garden. The community is on the roof of an apartment block.

November test 1

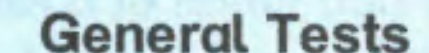
Today is my birthday. I'm with my friends at the carnival. There are many restaurants. There are places to eat and stores to buy. There are amazing rides like the rollercoaster.

November test 2

I'm Samer. My father and I will go quad biking in the desert. The company is called Desert Adventure. The guide will meet us in the hotel at 9 am. We will be in a group of six. We will ride the quad bike for thirty minutes. We have to wear helmets.

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع الواردة فى الاختبارات




General Tests

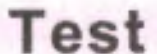
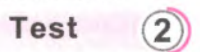


Test 1

محافظة القاهرة / إدارة الزاوية التعليمية

- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Cats are my favorite animals. Cats are beautiful with soft fur. Cats are clean and calm animals. Cats have sharp claws and teeth. They use them when they are scared.

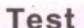



Test 2

محافظة الجيزة / إدارة الحوامدية التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Injy was reading a travel diary about her family's vacation. The favorite thing about vacation was visiting the Marco polo Museum. Marco polo was an Italian explorer. Injy was amazed by how difficult the journey to China was in those days.

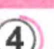



Test 3

محافظة القليوبية / إدارة قها التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Ahmed was shy on his first day at school. Hassan was the friend who helped Ahmed. Hassan was clever at science. Ahmed enjoyed his first day at school.

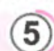


Test 4

محافظة المنوفية / إدارة السادات التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. We usually make birthday cakes for children. We put candles on cakes. children usually get a present, too. Birthdays are great times.



Test 5

محافظة الشرقية / إدارة بلبيس التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

If you want to make soap, put the ingredients for your soap in a bowl. Heat the ingredients on a cooker. Next, stir the ingredients with a wooden spoon. You can add flower petals to make soap look smell lovely.

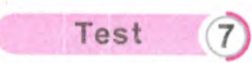


Test 6

محافظة الغربية / إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

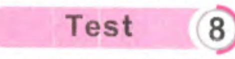
Nardeen is a good girl. Nardeen is twelve years old. Nardeen lives with her family in Luxor. There are many historical places to visit in Luxor. A lot of tourists visit Luxor every year.



محافظة الدقهلية / إدارة المطرية التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

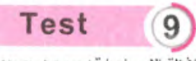
Nour asks Mariam to go to her house tomorrow. Mariam goes to help her aunt on Fridays. They grow vegetables and fruit in the garden. Mariam thinks the community garden is a good idea.



محافظة كفر الشيخ / إدارة مطوبس التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

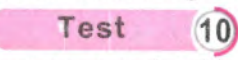
Sharm El-Sheikh is a great town. It is a town in Egypt. You can swim in the clear blue sea with your friends. You also can relax on the beach. You can go quad biking in the desert.



محافظة الاسماعيلية / إدارة شمال الاسماعيلية التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

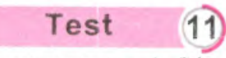
I love cats very much. Cats are my favorite animals. Cats use their claws when they are scared. They are beautiful with soft fur. They are clean and calm animals. They are my best pets.



محافظة الغربية / إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Rana likes cats. cats are clean and calm animal. Their hair is nice to touch. Rana thinks cats are the best pets. Cats make Rana feel happy.



محافظة مطروح / إدارة مطروح التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Asser is a good boy. Asser is nine years old. He goes to school by bus. Asser's favorite subject is math. He is clever. He wants to be an engineer when he is older.



محافظة البحيرة / إدارة النوبارية التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

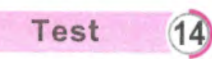
Elephants are big animals. Elephants are the largest land animals. Elephants can be as heavy as a bus. Elephants have long trunks. Elephants love to eat leaves and grass.



محافظة الفيوم / إدارة طامية التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

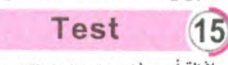
Ali visits grandparents in June. Ali goes fishing with his grandpa. Ali plays football with his friends. Ali sometimes helps his grandma in the kitchen.



محافظة بني سويف / إدارة ناصر التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

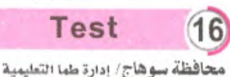
Last week, Samy's family had great fun. Samy's family went to Cairo. Samy's family went there by train. Samy visited the Egyptian Museum.



محافظة أسيوط / إدارة منفلوط التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

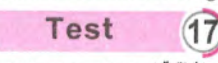
One day, there was a giant. The giant is selfish. He has a big garden. The giant doesn't allow the children to play in his garden. He builds a wall around his garden.



محافظة سوهاج / إدارة طما التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

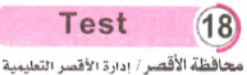
Nabil went to a new school last week. Nabil was shy. Essam helped Nabil know the school well. Essam was clever. Essam was good at math.



محافظة قنا / إدارة نجع حمادى التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

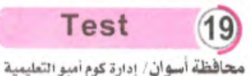
I am Amr. My friend Asser is in Alexandria. I visited him. We had lunch at a restaurant. We took photos in the theme park. Asser will visit me in Cairo next week.



محافظة الأقصر / إدارة الأقصر التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor. My school is great but it's far from my house. My friends Ahmed and Omar were in my class last year. This is the house where my uncle lives.



محافظة أسوان / إدارة كوم أمبو التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Basel is my friend. Basel is kind and helpful. Basel visited his grandparents in the summer. Basel went walking with his grandpa. Basel helped his grandma in the kitchen.



محافظة الوادى الجديد / إدارة الداخلة التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Basel and Hazem are friends. They are going to go quad biking in the desert. They want to ride on a rollercoaster. The theme park is in Giza.